

CHƯƠNG  
TRÌNH MỚI

# TỔNG HỢP BÀI TẬP TIẾNG ANH

# LỚP 8



- ★ Tóm tắt những chủ điểm ngữ pháp cần thiết cho học sinh lớp 8.
- ★ Bài tập ngữ pháp bám sát nội dung trong sách giáo khoa.
- ★ Đa dạng về cách thức làm bài, bao gồm cả trắc nghiệm và tự luận giúp các em học sinh đào sâu kiến thức và kỹ năng làm bài của mình.

# TỔNG HỢP BÀI TẬP TIẾNG ANH 8

(CÓ ĐÁP ÁN)

## UNIT 1: LEISURE ACTIVITIES

---

### A. PHONETICS

**I)- Read the following sentences aloud, and put the words with the cluster /br/ or /pr/ into the correct column.**

1. Apricot is a small, orange fruit with soft flesh and a stone inside
2. Brian is going to give a presentation on Friday.
3. Is he going to prepare for it?
4. How about a small present for Brian after his presentation?
5. Prevention is better than cure.
6. In order to play this computer game, you have to load this programme into the computer
7. She'll teach us how to play English pronunciation games.
8. Gold and silver are precious metals.
9. He never talks about his private life with anybody at work.
10. The new television series was an expensive project.
11. Too many cooks spoil the broth. (a saying)
12. The bank has many branches all over the country.
13. I need a new toothbrush.
14. How many brothers and sisters do you have?
15. I spend two hours every day browsing the Web.

/br/	/pr/

**II)-Complete the following sentences with the correct words from the table, and then read aloud the sentences. Practise saying the words with the cluster /br/ or /pr/.**

<i>Prince</i>	<i>present</i>	<i>principal</i>	<i>brick</i>	<i>branch</i>
<i>breakfast</i>	<i>prize</i>	<i>bridge</i>	<i>bracelet</i>	<i>price</i>

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ is the head of a school or college
2. The clock is a \_\_\_\_\_ of my birthday from my best friend.
3. They took a photo of the \_\_\_\_\_ over the Mekong River.
4. It is the house in our neighbourhood built of red \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Would you like some bread and butter for \_\_\_\_\_?
6. What is the \_\_\_\_\_ of petrol now?
7. The little boy climbed the tree and sat on a \_\_\_\_\_.
8. In Britain, the eldest son of the king or queen has the title ‘\_\_\_\_\_ of Wales’.
9. A \_\_\_\_\_ is piece of jewelry that you wear around your wrist or arm.
10. She won the first \_\_\_\_\_ in the competition.

## **B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR**

**I)-Leisure activities. Do the following tasks.**

**Task 1: Fill in each blank with the verbs below.**

<i>play</i>	<i>listen to</i>	<i>write</i>	<i>watch</i>	<i>have</i>	<i>do</i>
-------------	------------------	--------------	--------------	-------------	-----------

1. read: *a newspaper*, .....
2. go: *swimming*, .....
3. \_\_\_\_\_: *football*, .....
4. \_\_\_\_\_: *a letter*, .....

5. \_\_\_\_\_ : *the radio*, .....
6. \_\_\_\_\_ : *television*, .....
7. go to: *school*, .....
8. visit: *friends*, .....
9. \_\_\_\_\_ : *nothing*, .....
10. \_\_\_\_\_ : *a meal*, .....

**Task 2: Add these words/ phrases from the table to Part A. (There may be more than one possibility.)**

shopping	a magazine	the cinema	an e-mail	the guitar
CDs	a video	computer games	a restaurant	a shower
leisure activities	the library	cousins	a game show	music
something interesting	a quiz show	hiking	swimming	an outdoor activities

**II)-Match the “NetLingo” or “text speak” in the box with the words and phrases below.**

n	2moro	u	wd	4	luv	thx	ur
2	c u	@	abt	gr8	btw	r	xx

1. about = \_\_\_\_\_
2. and = \_\_\_\_\_
3. are = \_\_\_\_\_
4. at = \_\_\_\_\_
5. for = \_\_\_\_\_
6. great = \_\_\_\_\_
7. kisses = \_\_\_\_\_
8. by the way = \_\_\_\_\_
9. love = \_\_\_\_\_
10. you = \_\_\_\_\_
11. see you = \_\_\_\_\_
12. thanks = \_\_\_\_\_
13. to/two = \_\_\_\_\_
14. would = \_\_\_\_\_
15. your = \_\_\_\_\_
16. tomorrow = \_\_\_\_\_

**III)-Read the text message below and put them in the correct order. Write the answer (1-5) in each blank.**

\_\_\_\_\_ A. Hi, Katy! Thx 4 ur text ... Yes, wd love 2 meet 2moro. c u @ Roebuck's abt 5?

\_\_\_\_\_ B. Fantastic!!! What is it? r u in luv.

\_\_\_\_\_ C. That's gr8, c u @ 5. btw, I've got some important news 4 u ...

\_\_\_\_\_ D. Hi Sue! ... Joe n I will be in town 2moro. wd u like 2 meet 4 a coffee? Luv  
Katy

\_\_\_\_\_ E. Tell u 2moro Love n xxxxx Katy

**IV)-Complete the sentences with the verb + -ing.**

*do*

*go*

*play*

*ski*

*swim*

*watch*

1. Susan loves \_\_\_\_\_ judo.
2. They enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ the Olympics on TV.
3. We really like \_\_\_\_\_ in the Alps in February.
4. Sam hates \_\_\_\_\_ boxing but he loves football.
5. I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ in the pool at the sports centre.
6. Do you like \_\_\_\_\_ running in the morning?

**V)-Complete the conversations with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.**

Mai: I (1. not like/ watch) \_\_\_\_\_ football. I (2. hate/ stand)  
\_\_\_\_\_ around and (3. get) \_\_\_\_\_ cold.

Lan: Me, too. I (4. prefer/ be) \_\_\_\_\_ indoors. I (5. not mind/ play)  
\_\_\_\_\_ football – on my computer!

Nick: Ha ha! I know your brother's really good at football, Mai. \_\_\_\_\_  
(6.he/ like/ play) at the back?

Mai: Tuan? No, he (7. prefer/ play) \_\_\_\_\_ centre forward. He (8. like/ soccer) \_\_\_\_\_ goals!

Lan: Great pass, Tuan!

Mai: Lan, do you like football?

Nick: No, but she (9. not mind/ watch) \_\_\_\_\_ Tuan!

### C. SPEAKING

I)-Complete the conversation with the words given in the box, then practice it with your partner.

*do      o'clock      likes      like      and you      joke      afternoon      take*

Mai: Do you (1) \_\_\_\_\_ roller skating, Mike?

Nick: Yes, I do. I go roller-skating every Saturday!

Mai: Oh, really? Where?

Nick: Well, I go to the park with my friends after school, at about five (2) \_\_\_\_\_. We roller-skate for about an hour and then we go home.

Mai: I go roller-skating too – but I go on Sunday. I go to the market with my mother in the morning, and then I (3) \_\_\_\_\_ our dog for a walk. Then in the (4) \_\_\_\_\_ I go to the park with my mother.

Nick: Your mother?

Mai: Yes, she (5) \_\_\_\_\_ roller-skating too, and she's really good!

Nick: And what do you do on Sunday evening?

Mai: Oh, I usually go out with my friends. We have a drink together or go to the cinema. (6) \_\_\_\_\_?

Nick: Oh, on Sunday I (7) \_\_\_\_\_ my homework.

Mai: What? Is that a (8) \_\_\_\_\_?

Nick: No! It's true!

Mai: Oh, Nick! Get a life!

*Notes:*

- roller-skating (n) = môn trượt pa-tanh; roller-skater (v) = trượt pa-tanh
- Get a life! = Thôi đi nào!

II)-Complete the conversation, using the words or phrases given.

lots to see	come back	a good place	why don't	somewhere different
-------------	-----------	--------------	-----------	---------------------

Mai: Do you two still want to go away for the weekend – you know, on the 22<sup>nd</sup>?

Phuc: Yeah, definitely.

Nick: Yeah, I want to ...

Mai: Because we talked about going to the countryside, do you remember?

Phuc: Oh, yes, I'd love to go there. People say it's (1) \_\_\_\_\_ for walking.

Nick: Mm, it's just that I went there last summer and the summer before. I'd like to try (2) \_\_\_\_\_ ... a city maybe.

Mai: Yeah, I can understand that.

Phuc: (3) \_\_\_\_\_ we go to the suburb for the weekend? There's something for all of us.

Mai: Yeah, there's (4) \_\_\_\_\_: the temples, the pagodas, the woods.

Nick: It sounds great to me. We all like going out!

Phuc: And we can (5) \_\_\_\_\_ on the same day.

Mai: And should we bring some foods and drinks with us?

Nick: That's right. It's a good idea, Mai.

Phuc: Great!

#### D. READING

I)-A new report into teenagers' leisure time has some surprising results. Read it and fill in each blank with the correct figure from the report.

In this digital age, many people think that young adults spend all their time on the computer. And a new government survey of how young adults spend their leisure time says that 87 percent of people in the UK between the ages of 13 to 19 use the Internet every day. But it's still important for young people to go out with friends. And the most popular evening out is going to the cinema: 42 percent say it's their favourite way to spend an evening.

For people who don't go out, not surprisingly, television is more popular than radio. 82 percent say that they watch television for more than ten hours a week – mainly for films and news programmes – but only 23 percent listen to the radio.

Music is always a favourite topic, but it seems that many people listen to music than can play a music instrument. The survey reveals that 38 percent watch live music, but 30 percent of people between 13 and 19 can play a musical instrument.

Only 32 percent of young adults play sports; with football, swimming, and cycling the most popular activities. But that means that more than two-thirds don't play any sport!

### **Leisure Time Survey of Teenagers In The UK**

- (1)\_\_\_\_\_ percent of teenagers use the Internet every day.
- The most popular leisure activity is going to the cinema: (2)\_\_\_\_\_ percent say it is their favourite evening activity.
- (3)\_\_\_\_\_ percent of people say that they watch TV for more than (4) \_\_\_\_\_ hours a week, but only (5)\_\_\_\_\_ percent listen to the radio.
- (6)\_\_\_\_\_ percent of young people watch live music, but only (7)\_\_\_\_\_ percent can play a musical instrument.
- Only (8)\_\_\_\_\_ percent of young adults play sports. Football, swimming, and cycling are the most popular sports.

II)-Read the passage about Phong's weekend and answer the questions.

On Friday's afternoon, after school, I usually surf the Net or listen to music. In the evening I often go to the cinema with my friends.

On Saturday morning I get up late and have breakfast. Then I play football with my classmates in the park. In the afternoon I watch TV (usually a football match). In the evening I go to my best friend's place – we sometimes play computer games, or we talk.

On Sunday morning I do my homework. Then I listen to music or watch TV. On Sunday evening I surf the Net again, or read a book.

1. Where does Phong often go on Friday evening?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. When does he play football?



---

3. What does he watch on Saturday afternoon?

---

4. What does he do on Sunday morning?

---

5. When does he surf the Net?

---

III)-Read the passage carefully, and then answer the questions below.

In the 1970s, skateboarding suddenly became very popular. At first, skateboarders moved slowly on flat, smooth areas. Then they began to ride quickly. This is called 'freestyle' skateboarding. Soon they were skateboarding skillfully up ramps and doing tricks in the air. This is called 'ramp' skateboarding. Then they started skateboarding and doing tricks on the street. This was 'street-style' skateboarding – a combination of freestyle and ramp. For this, the skateboarders needed protective clothing such as knee and elbow pads and helmets. This allowed them to skateboard safely.

Today skateboarding is still a very popular sport, and there are lots of competitions.

**Note:** *skateboarding (n)* = môn trượt ván

1. When did skateboarding become very popular?

---

2. What are the three styles of skateboarding?

---

3. What was 'street-style' skateboarding?

---

4. Why do 'street-style' skateboarders need protective clothing?

---

5. Do you think skateboarding is a very popular sport now? Why or why not?

---

IV)- Read the passage about British and American teenagers, and answer the questions.

**Sport:** In the UK, football, rugby, tennis and basketball are the most popular sports for teenagers. In the USA, American football, athletics, basketball and baseball are popular.

**The Internet and television:** Teenagers in both the UK and the USA today watch television less than before but they use the Internet more. They spend over 25 hours a week online.

**Pocket money and shopping:** The average teenager in the UK get about £7 a week pocket money. In the USA it is about \$10. They spend their money on clothes and going out, but magazines, presents and snacks are also important.

**Friends:** The average British and American teenager has seven close friends. He or she has sixteen online friends on social network websites.

1. Which sports do British and American teenagers play in their free time?

---

2. How long do they spend online?

---

3. How much pocket money do they get?

---

4. What do they spend it on?

---

5. How many online friends do they have?

---

V)-Complete the conversation, using the phrases or sentences given.

- A. are much higher than the positive effects of the games
- B. opportunities for visual learning
- C. they aim at a variety of people in different ages
- D. in my opinion, these games are more active and effective compared to watching TV
- E. always do anything to reach a higher level of the game

**Mai:** I think computer games are the most popular entertainments in modern societies. Is it right?

**Phuc:** Yes, that's right. And (1)\_\_\_\_\_

**Mai:** And they cause addiction among teenagers...

**Nick:** That's it. Because we (2)\_\_\_\_\_

**Mai:** I think one of the reasons that computer games are very popular is that they provide (3)\_\_\_\_\_

**Phuc:** Yeah, (4)\_\_\_\_\_

**Nick:** But the negative effects they bring (5)\_\_\_\_\_

**Mai:** I think so, and students who prefer computer games to other entertainments have more behavioral problem than other students.

## **E. WRITING**

1)-Rearrange the sentences to make a suitable text about the research finding, "Teens who use social media too much have lower grades and how to solve it" by writing the correct number (1-10) in each blank.

\_\_\_\_\_ **A.** One 2010 study showed that only 37% of "heavy" media users had grades lower than the average, while 35% of "light" social users were lower in average grades.

\_\_\_\_\_ **B.** Other studies have found a negative relationship between social media usage and overall Grade Point Average (GPA).

\_\_\_\_\_ **C.** But does too much time social networking harm students' schoolwork?

\_\_\_\_\_ **D.** One small girl said that checking text messages and Facebook on her smartphone was the biggest obstacle to her homework.

\_\_\_\_\_ **E.** Several studies have showed opposite results.

\_\_\_\_\_ **F.** Some students are turning on software such as "Block Facebook" to block certain website on their computers, and allow them to have only certain amounts of time on Facebook so that they can focus on homework.

\_\_\_\_\_ **G.** Social networking can help connect people with friends, give people the chance to share pictures online, and help people communicate easily.

\_\_\_\_\_ **H.** One study stated that “sending text message and using Facebook while doing homework were bad for overall GPA”.

\_\_\_\_\_ **I.** According to Facebook in 2016, there are over 618 million active users per day, and over a billion active users per month.

\_\_\_\_\_ **J.** In this study, there was no relation between an excess of social media and a below average grades.

II)-Write a paragraph about the topic: “Whether parents help their children with social network”, using the cues given.

1. There/ both/ many good things/ many potential dangers/ social network.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

2. It/ important for parents/ teach/ their children/ how/ use/ social media wisely.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Social network/ be/ start of bad things/ like cyberbullying.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Recent reports/ say/ many teenagers/ have/ online contact/ strangers/ and/ it/ make/ them/ feel scared or uncomfortable.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Other/ receive/ online advertising/ that/ be/ inappropriate for their age.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

6. It/ be/ important/ parents/ be/ aware of/ what/ children/ doing online.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

7. Parents/ make/ children/ understand that/ they/ respect/ children’s privacy.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

8. However/ parents/ want/ make sure/ children/ be safe.

\_\_\_\_\_

I)-Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- |                         |                   |                       |                    |
|-------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. <u>l</u> eisure   | B. <u>e</u> ight  | C. <u>c</u> elebrate  | D. <u>p</u> enalty |
| 2. A. <u>f</u> un       | B. <u>s</u> un    | C. <u>s</u> urf       | D. <u>c</u> ut     |
| 3. A. br <u>a</u> celet | B. c <u>a</u> ke  | C. c <u>a</u> ke      | D. h <u>a</u> t    |
| 4. A. alth <u>o</u> ugh | B. la <u>u</u> gh | C. par <u>a</u> graph | D. en <u>o</u> ugh |
| 5. A. com <u>e</u> dy   | B. nov <u>e</u> l | C. princ <u>e</u> ss  | D. cin <u>e</u> ma |

II)-Fill in each blank with the correct words with the cluster /br/ or /pr/.

6. Both their parents have dark \_\_\_\_\_ hair.
7. They worked all day without a \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Would you like some \_\_\_\_\_ and butter?
9. Watch out! There's \_\_\_\_\_ glass on the floor.
10. We will be out all day so \_\_\_\_\_ some sandwiches with us.
11. Mai looks really \_\_\_\_\_ in that dress, doesn't she?
12. He was awarded second \_\_\_\_\_ for his painting.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ is a plant with green flower-heads eaten as a vegetable.
14. You need plenty of \_\_\_\_\_ when you want to play a musical instrument.
15. 'In', 'for', 'to', 'out of' are all \_\_\_\_\_.

III)-Jay and Tina talk about their leisure activities. Complete what they say with the correct verbs.

Jay: My computer is very important for me. I'm a student at Manchester University, so I (16) \_\_\_\_\_ the Internet a lot for my studies and my friends and I (17) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of computer games. I don't (18) \_\_\_\_\_ any sports. I (19) \_\_\_\_\_ to evening classes twice a week; it's a course on Computer Skills. On other nights, I (20) \_\_\_\_\_ with friends – we usually (21) \_\_\_\_\_ to the cinema.

Tina: I'm an amateur musician, so music is my life! I (22) \_\_\_\_\_ the radio nearly all day – mainly classical or jazz. When I (23) \_\_\_\_\_ TV, it's always a music channel. I even (24) \_\_\_\_\_ music when I (25) \_\_\_\_\_ to the gym! I

(26)\_\_\_\_\_ the piano and the saxophone. And I (27)\_\_\_\_\_ a lot of live music in my free time.

IV)-Rewrite the messages in "NetLingo"

28. Hi, Alex. Are you free tomorrow? Would you like to go to see a film? Love Ed

---

29. OK. What would you like to see?

---

30. How about "The Queen and I"? It's at the Odeon Cinema at 7.30 pm.

---

31. Great... What time?

---

32. About 7.15?

---

33. See you there. By the way, I haven't got any money... Can you pay for my ticket?

---

34. I'll lend you the money.

---

35. Thanks for that! See you tomorrow.

---

Love and kisses, Alex.

V)-Complete the sentences in Mai's e-mail with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

Hi Susan!

Well. I'm here in Ha Noi, now. I see quite a lot of my cousin Hoa because we (36. enjoy/ do) \_\_\_\_\_ the same things. I have some new friends called David and John. David is very good at computers and he (37. not mind/ help) \_\_\_\_\_ me so that's good. John is really nice too. He (38. play) \_\_\_\_\_ basketball and he (39. go/ skateboard) \_\_\_\_\_ quite a lot. His brother Toby is 18 and he's really cool but he (40. prefer/ play) \_\_\_\_\_ football. I (41. do) \_\_\_\_\_

---

gymnastics once a week and Hoa (42. do) \_\_\_\_\_ karate. She prefers indoor sports because she (43. not like/ get) \_\_\_\_\_ cold! Write soon!

Love, Mai

VI)-Read the conversation and put the sentences (A-F) in the correct places (44-48). There is one extra question.

- A. Who's she?
- B. Not just a name on a computer screen.
- C. Does she live near here?
- D. Do you fancy coming with us?
- E. Are you there?
- F. How do you know her?

**Mai:** Hi, Susan. I'm going out with Hoa and Lan this evening. (44) \_\_\_\_\_  
We're going to have something to eat and then go to the cinema.

**Susan:** I can't. I'm going to chat with Linda.

**Mai:** (45) \_\_\_\_\_

**Susan:** She's my best friend. You don't know her.

**Mai:** (46) \_\_\_\_\_

**Susan:** We chat online. She's great.

**Mai:** (47) \_\_\_\_\_

**Susan:** No. She's from Scotland. I really like her, we chat all the time.

**Mai:** Come on, Susan. She's not your real friend. Let's go and have a drink and a cake.

**Susan:** I'm not hungry. Anyway, I want to go to the Internet café. Linda might be online.

**Mai:** Well, I'm going to meet Hoa and Lan in the canteen. You know, real people you can talk to. (48) \_\_\_\_\_

VII)-Read the review of a video game. Put the comments in the correct order (A-F).

- |     |       |                             |
|-----|-------|-----------------------------|
| 49. | _____ | A. What happens in the game |
| 50. | _____ | B. The kind of game         |
| 51. | _____ | C. The name of game         |
| 52. | _____ | D. What features it has     |

53. \_\_\_\_\_ E. The price  
54. \_\_\_\_\_ F. Problems with the game

By SimsFan

I love “The Sims”! It’s a strategy game and you control the lives of cartoon characters – the “Sims”. You help them work, play, shop and do things in their houses. I bought the first Sims when I was thirteen and I played it every day. This new version is much better – it has got amazing graphics, lots of new and fun characters and incredible music. But it does crash sometimes. It’s not a cheap game (£19.99), but it is great fun!

VIII)-Read the article and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

### **So strange! People have strange hobbies**

Mr. and Mrs. Ball live in Oxford. They collect garden gnomes. They have 225 in their garden! The gnomes are all different colours and come from different countries.

Today, Mr. and Mrs. Ball are preparing a big garden party for their gnomes. They are putting lanterns on the trees and decorating the garden with colourful ballons. “We’re writing 225 invitations and we are putting up little tables and chairs for the gnomes,” Mrs. Ball says. “It’s a lot of work, but it’s fun.”

*Note:*

- (garden) gnome (n) = tượng thần lùn giữ của

	<b>T</b>	<b>F</b>
55. Mr. and Mrs. Ball come from England.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
56. They collect garden plants.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
57. There are a lot of gnomes in Mr. and Mrs. Ball’s garden.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
58. The gnomes are all from the UK.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
59. The gnomes are not very colourful	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
60. Mr. and Mrs. Ball have had a party	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
61. Mr. and Mrs. Ball will invite all their gnomes to the party.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
62. Mr. and Mrs. Ball hope that the party will be enjoyable.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

IX)-Read the passage carefully, and do the tasks that follow.

**Task 1: Match the heading (A-E) to the paragraphs (63-67).**

**A. No computers for two days.**



- B. Never again!
- C. Homework wasn't as easy.
- D. I used my phone more.
- E. I didn't want to listen to them talking!

**No computer day! How did you survive?**

63. ☐ Ben, Luton, UK

It was very difficult. I had quite a lot of homework to do. Usually, I use the computer to find information and I write my essay on it. My dad has lots of books, atlases and reference books, but most all of them are out of date! It wasn't difficult to find information, but it took more time.

64. ☐ Jenny, Des Moines, USA

I didn't have email contact with my friends. I hate it! I sent a lot of texts. A few of my friends also turned off their computers, but most of them didn't. On Sunday, there were lots of emails to read.

65. ☐ David, Los Angeles, USA

I usually listen to sports on the Internet on Saturdays. I can listen to baseball from anywhere in the USA or football from Europe. I listened to my mum's small kitchen radio. It was awful. There was no football at all. I won't join in the next "no computer" day!

66. ☐ Sara, Richmond, UK

My main problem was music. The batteries in my MP3 player were flat. I don't have a DVD player – only on my computer – so I listened to the radio. It wasn't very good. A few DJs are OK, but most of them talk too much.

67. ☐ Lisa, Swansea, Wales

I read a lot. My mum has some good books. It was very relaxing. Usually, my eyes hurt in the evening. Last Saturday, they were fine. I went to bed earlier, too. The next day, I didn't turn on my computer at all. I wanted to finish my book.

**Task 2: Match the words/ phrases (68-72) with their meanings (F-J). Write the answer in each blank.**

\_\_\_\_\_ 68. survive (v)

F. a device giving electricity

\_\_\_\_\_ 69. atlas (n)

G. continue to live

\_\_\_\_\_ 70. out of date (adj)

H. a book of maps

\_\_\_\_\_ 71. battery (n)

I. not working

\_\_\_\_\_ 72. flat (adj)

J. no longer used

X)-Fill the gaps with the words/ phrases in the box to give your opinion about the best leisure activities. More than one word can be suitable for some gaps.

*In my opinion*

*In short*

*Finally*

*Second*

*In addition*

*First*

*Besides*

*also*

I choose reading as my favourite leisure activity for a number of reasons. (73)\_\_\_\_\_. I read everywhere I can and whenever I am free. (74) \_\_\_\_\_. I read many kinds of books, such as: short stories, novels, science books, etc. Books help me to have more knowledge and experience of society, science, and our world. Have you read the book “The Art of Happiness” by the Dalai Lama? It teaches us how not only to get over sadness, but also to be always cheerful. (75)\_\_\_\_\_, it (76)\_\_\_\_\_ reminds us to live because everybody and real happiness only comes when helping other people. (77)\_\_\_\_\_ that, I read a lot of detective stories, like “The Godfather”, “Sherlock Holmes”, etc. (78)\_\_\_\_\_, a number of comic books and magazines for teenagers make me feel relaxed in my free time. (79)\_\_\_\_\_, reading makes my mind rich, my life more pleasant, and I learn a lot from it. (80)\_\_\_\_\_, reading brings me many benefits.

## UNIT 2: LIFE IN THE COUNTRYSIDE

---

### A. PHONETICS

Read the following sentences aloud, and put the words in the cluster /b/ or /k/ into the correct column.

1. My father usually has a cup of black coffee for breakfast.
2. His eyes were bright blue.
3. Take a deep breath and blow out the candles on the birthday cake.
4. Today she is wearing a white silk blouse.
5. I went for a walk around the block.
6. The teacher blamed me for the accident.
7. If you can't answer the question, leave a blank.
8. The apple tree is covered in blossom.
9. He became completely blind after the car accident.
10. "Oh, dear! You blinked just as I took the photograph!"
11. I went to the table tennis club yesterday.
12. Mai and Phong are in the same class.
13. Do you like classical music?
14. Cats are very clean animals.
15. The water was so clear that we could see the bottom of the lake.
16. She's so clever with her hands.
17. It is a humid, tropical climate.
18. He was climbing up the wall.
19. She works as a clerk in an office.
20. Is our hotel close to the beach?

/b/	/k/

## B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I)-Fill in the blanks with the correct words or phrases matching with the verbs. Maybe some verbs can be used more than once.

<i>grapes</i>	<i>food</i>	<i>buffaloes</i>	<i>a camel</i>	<i>data</i>
<i>dolls</i>	<i>a tent</i>	<i>water</i>	<i>cattle</i>	<i>a flag</i>
<i>strawberry</i>	<i>a bike</i>	<i>a fence</i>	<i>tea buds</i>	<i>a car</i>
<i>goats</i>	<i>information</i>	<i>an ostrich</i>	<i>blackberry</i>	<i>sheep</i>
<i>a motorbike</i>	<i>a notice</i>	<i>postcards</i>	<i>a memorial</i>	<i>a donkey</i>

1. **ride:**

\_\_\_\_\_

2. **collect:**

\_\_\_\_\_

3. **pick:**

\_\_\_\_\_

4. **herd:**

\_\_\_\_\_

5. **put up:**

\_\_\_\_\_

*Note:* -ostrich (n) = đà điểu

II)-Match a word in column A with its definition in column B, writing the answer in each blank.

Answer	A	B
_____	1. cattle	A. food made from milk, such as butter, cheese, etc.
_____	2. a nomad	B. tasks such as cleaning, washing, ironing... that have to be done regularly at home
_____	3. pasture	C. a field planted with rice growing in water
_____	4. home-made	D. an area with mountains or hills

_____	5. a paddy field	E. a person moving from a place to another for earning a living all the time
_____	6. household chores	F. male and female cows on a farm
_____	7. countryside	G. the way that you live
_____	8. lifestyle	H. made at home
_____	9. dairy products	I. a field or land covered with grass, where cattle can feed
_____	10. highland	J. land which is away from towns and cities

**III)-Fill in each blank with the correct word from the box.**

<i>ride</i>	<i>grassland</i>	<i>cattle</i>	<i>loaded</i>	<i>kites</i>
<i>beehive</i>	<i>vast</i>	<i>harvest</i>	<i>convenient</i>	<i>dry</i>

- Several people were flying \_\_\_\_\_ on the field.
- Russia is a \_\_\_\_\_ country with a lot of natural resources.
- My brother is learning to \_\_\_\_\_ a horse at the moment.
- Farmers often leave the rice in the sun to \_\_\_\_\_.
- They \_\_\_\_\_ the buffalo-drawn cart with hay.
- Farmers always need extra help with the \_\_\_\_\_.
- Local people are turning \_\_\_\_\_ into farmland.
- A \_\_\_\_\_ is a type of box that people use for keeping bees in.
- Is it \_\_\_\_\_ to meet you at the moment?
- My uncle raises a herd of \_\_\_\_\_ on his farm.

**IV)-Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of the word in brackets.**

- Iceland is considered the most \_\_\_\_\_ country in the world. (peace)
- A \_\_\_\_\_ lifestyle has its advantages and disadvantages. (nomad)
- My brother has been \_\_\_\_\_ a stamp for several years.
- It is a/an \_\_\_\_\_ place to hold a picnic because it is too far from the road. (convenience)
- Drinking water in some areas may be \_\_\_\_\_. (safe)

6. During my stay in the village, I was \_\_\_\_\_ with several local farmers.  
(friend)
7. Encouraging children to eat and drink \_\_\_\_\_ is very important.  
(health)
8. Local people in the village often wear their \_\_\_\_\_ costumes during the festivals. (tradition)
9. Please give \_\_\_\_\_ to that charity to help the homeless after the flood.  
(generous)
10. The baby slept very \_\_\_\_\_ because the bed was really comfortable.  
(sound)

V)-Complete the sentences, using the comparative form of the adjectives in the box.

<i>cheap</i>	<i>expensive</i>	<i>good</i>	<i>small</i>	<i>hot</i>
<i>intelligent</i>	<i>bad</i>	<i>big</i>	<i>hard</i>	<i>important</i>

1. An elephant is \_\_\_\_\_ a mouse.
2. The weather today is \_\_\_\_\_ it was yesterday.
3. A diamond costs a lot of money. A diamond is \_\_\_\_\_ a ruby.
4. A lake is \_\_\_\_\_ an ocean.
5. A person can think logically. A person is \_\_\_\_\_ an animal.
6. Good health is \_\_\_\_\_ money.
7. I can buy a bicycle, but not a motorbike. A bicycle is \_\_\_\_\_ a motorbike.
8. The last question is \_\_\_\_\_ the others.
9. I think my second essay is \_\_\_\_\_ the first. There were many mistakes in the first essay.
10. The food in a street market is \_\_\_\_\_ than in a supermarket.

VI)-Use the adjectives in brackets in their correct forms of comparison to complete the sentences.

1. Tea is \_\_\_\_\_ coffee. (cheap)
2. The new harvest machine is \_\_\_\_\_ than the old one. (effective)
3. The countryside is \_\_\_\_\_ the town. (beautiful)
4. A tractor is \_\_\_\_\_ a buffalo. (powerful)
5. My sister is \_\_\_\_\_ me. (tall)
6. Blue whales are \_\_\_\_\_ elephants. (heavy)

7. The Mekong River is \_\_\_\_\_ the Red River. (long)
8. Do you think English is \_\_\_\_\_ French in grammar? (easy)
9. My new bed is \_\_\_\_\_ my old bed. (comfortable)
10. The film about my village town is \_\_\_\_\_ than the book. (interesting)

VII)-Complete the sentences with suitable forms of the adverbs given in the brackets.

1. I am faster worker than Tom is. (fast)  
I work \_\_\_\_\_ .
2. Mai's singing is more beautiful than Mi's. (beautifully)  
Mai sings \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. We were earlier at the party than the Smiths last night. (early)  
We arrived \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. Phong's voice is louder than Nick's. (loudly)  
Phong speaks \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. My English is more fluent than my sister's. (fluently)  
I speak English \_\_\_\_\_ .

### C. SPEAKING

**Decide whether the statement is an advantage (A) or a disadvantage (D) of the nomadic life, and write the answer in the blank. Then practice the conversation about what you like or dislike about it.**

- |  | <b>A/D</b> |
|--|------------|
| 1. A nomad constantly changes locations, switching from one place to another.                              | _____      |
| 2. It is hard to maintain a relationship.  | _____      |
| 3. This constant process of change is a great learning experience, and when you learn, you become smarter. | _____      |
| 4. Nomads don't take life very seriously, and they think about life very optimistically.                   | _____      |
| 5. You can learn to ride a horse from the early age, and travel everywhere by horse or camel.              | _____      |

6. Nomads think and adjust fast. \_\_\_\_\_
7. The basic understanding for nomads is that “everything is temporary and nothing is yours”. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Being a nomad, you never really have a feeling of real home. \_\_\_\_\_
- A. What do you like about the nomadic life?
- B. Well, .....
- A. And what don’t you like about it?
- B. ....

**D. READING**

1)-Choose the item among A, B, C or D that best answers the question about the passage.

Living in the country is something that people from the city often dream about. However, in reality, it has both advantages and disadvantages.

There are certainly many advantages to living in the country. First, you can enjoy peace and quietness. Moreover, people tend to be friendlier. A further advantage is that there is less traffic, so it is safer for young children.

However, there are certain disadvantages or drawbacks to life outside the city. First, because there are fewer people, you are likely to have few friends. In addition, entertainment is difficult to find, particularly in the evening. Furthermore, the fact that there are fewer shops and services means that it is hard to find jobs.

In short, it can be seen that the country is more suitable for some people than others. On the whole, it is often the best for those who are retired or who have young children. In contrast, young people who have a career are better provided in the city.

1. According to the passage, living in the country has \_\_\_\_\_.
 

A. only good points	B. only bad points
C. both good and bad points	D. no disadvantages
2. How many advantages does living in the country have?
 

A. Two	B. Three
C. Four	D. No



- II)-Fill in each blank with ONE suitable word.

English villages are not all alike, but (6)\_\_\_\_\_ some ways they are not very different from (7)\_\_\_\_\_ other. Almost every village (8) \_\_\_\_\_ a church, the round or square tower of which can (9)\_\_\_\_\_ seen from many miles around. Surrounding the church is the church yard, (10)\_\_\_\_\_ people are buried.

Reasons: relaxing/ quiet

Dislikes: city life/ not safe enough/ walk around alone/ too dangerous/ cycle/ street/ heavy traffic

1. Linda lives \_\_\_\_\_
2. In summer, she \_\_\_\_\_
3. In winter, she \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. She really likes it because \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. She thinks city life is not \_\_\_\_\_
6. She also thinks it is too \_\_\_\_\_

II)-Use the words or phrases given to write meaningful sentences.

1. Soc Trang province/ follow/ new rural development programme/ 22 poor villages/ since 2000.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Local people/ rice, vegetables/ and/ animals.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Agricultural work/ become/ less difficult/ thank/ machinery.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Electricity/ help/ children/ study better/ and/ paved roads/ make/ transportation/ easier.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Public works/ help/ local people especially Khmer people/ develop production/ reduce poverty/ create better lives.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

TEST (UNIT 2)

I)-Choose the words/ phrases that do not go with the verb.

- |            |                 |                  |                 |                 |
|------------|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. ride    | A. a donkey     | B. a car         | C. a horse      | D. an elephant  |
| 2. collect | A. tomatoes     | B. entertainment | C. honey        | D. tea leaves   |
| 3. pick    | A. blackberries | B. roses         | C. wild flowers | D. passengers   |
| 4. herd    | A. cattle       | B. cows          | C. carts        | D. camels       |
| 5. put up  | A. tents        | B. a new fence   | C. umbrellas    | D. nomadic life |

II)-Complete the following sentences with the correct words with the cluster /bl/ or /kl/ from the table, and then read aloud the sentences.

<i>blame</i>	<i>close</i>	<i>black</i>	<i>clock</i>	<i>click</i>
<i>club</i>	<i>clothes</i>	<i>blood</i>	<i>blue</i>	<i>block</i>

6. She often dressed in \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Her hands were \_\_\_\_\_ with cold.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ on the mouse to choose the correct answers.
9. Some people \_\_\_\_\_ the changes in the climate on pollution.
10. The heart pumps \_\_\_\_\_ around the body.
11. We are working in an office \_\_\_\_\_.
12. Are you a member of the football \_\_\_\_\_?
13. The \_\_\_\_\_ is five minutes fast.
14. They invited only friends to the party.
15. She was wearing new \_\_\_\_\_.

III)-Fill in each blank with the correct adjective from the box.

<i>slow</i>	<i>vast</i>	<i>quiet</i>	<i>peaceful</i>	<i>nomadic</i>
<i>inconvenient</i>	<i>colourful</i>	<i>safe</i>	<i>hard</i>	<i>brave</i>

16. Nick looks very funny – today he is wearing a \_\_\_\_\_ shirt.
17. It will be very \_\_\_\_\_ for me to have no bicycle.
18. Last Sunday our class visited a \_\_\_\_\_ village near our school.

19. The dentist asked me to try to be \_\_\_\_\_ because it might hurt me a little.
20. People have cut down trees in a/an \_\_\_\_\_ area of forest this year.
21. On the Gobi Highland we can find several \_\_\_\_\_ tribes living on raising cattle.
22. The life is usually \_\_\_\_\_ and quiet in the countryside.
23. Is it \_\_\_\_\_ to drink water from this river?
24. After he retired, he leads a \_\_\_\_\_ life in his home village.
25. Many years ago my village was very poor and the living conditions were so \_\_\_\_\_.

IV)-Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of the word in brackets.

26. There is a \_\_\_\_\_ of books on the shelf. (collect)
27. It is very \_\_\_\_\_ for people in remote areas to get to hospitals. (convenience)
28. He is very \_\_\_\_\_ with his hands. (skill)
29. It is said that water collected from the local stream is \_\_\_\_\_ to drink. (safe)
30. We want \_\_\_\_\_ relations with all countries. (friend)
31. I like to eat \_\_\_\_\_, so I eat a lot of fruits and vegetables every day. (health)

V)-Complete the sentences, using the comparative form of the adverbs from the correspondent adjectives in the brackets.

32. It usually rains \_\_\_\_\_ in Central Viet Nam than in other regions. (heavy)
33. I will have to try a bit \_\_\_\_\_ than this. (hard)
34. The hall was lighted \_\_\_\_\_ than the corridors. (bright)
35. Times goes by \_\_\_\_\_ when we are busy. (quick)
36. Our family has lived \_\_\_\_\_ in the country than in the town since last year. (happy)
37. The boys were playing the game \_\_\_\_\_ than the girls. (noisy)
38. This task can be completed \_\_\_\_\_ than that one. (easy)
39. A tractor can plough \_\_\_\_\_ than a buffalo or a horse. (good)

VI)-Complete the sentences, using the comparative form of the adverbs from the correspondent adjectives in the box.

<i>generous</i>	<i>bad</i>	<i>optimistic</i>	<i>healthy</i>
<i>traditional</i>	<i>quick</i>	<i>sound</i>	<i>good</i>

40. A baby can sleep \_\_\_\_\_ than an adult.
41. People in the country eat \_\_\_\_\_ than people in the city.
42. Our grandparents got dressed \_\_\_\_\_ than we do nowadays.
43. Nick speaks English \_\_\_\_\_ than I do.
44. That old lady donates \_\_\_\_\_ than her family members.
45. City people seem to apply modern techniques \_\_\_\_\_ than country people.
46. The scientist talked \_\_\_\_\_ about the future of young people in the country than local people.
47. The paddy fields in my village were \_\_\_\_\_ affected by the floods than the next village.

VII)-Complete the sentences with suitable forms of the adverbs given in the brackets.

48. Nick is a careful writer than Phuc. (carefully)  
Nick writes essays \_\_\_\_\_.
49. A snail is slower than a crab. (slowly)  
A snail moves \_\_\_\_\_.
50. My father's explanation about the subject was clearer than my brother's. (clearly)  
My father explained the subject \_\_\_\_\_.
51. My cousin is a better singer than I am. (well)  
My cousin sings \_\_\_\_\_.
52. Phong is a faster swimmer than Phuc. (fast)  
Phong swims \_\_\_\_\_.

VIII)-Complete the conversation, using the phrases/ sentences (A-H) given.

- A. It's a real life, I think.
- B. You don't worry about delay or being late any more.
- C. I see.
- D. the fresh air and the open space
- E. to make you fit and happy

F. It's really interesting.

G. We can't enjoy social activities there, especially in the evening.

H. the traffic systems in the city

Nick: Hi, Mai. Have you just come back from your stay in the countryside?

Mai: Yeah, I stayed on my uncle's farm for the weekend. (53)\_\_\_\_\_

Nick: Do you really like the life in the countryside? Why?

Mai: First, you can enjoy (54)\_\_\_\_\_.

Nick: What do you mean, Mai?

Mai: In the countryside, we have the yard or the garden to play in. You can run around, kick a ball or chase butterflies. (55)\_\_\_\_\_

Nick: In my opinion, the countryside ... it's only nice if people are retired or they get old. (56)\_\_\_\_\_.

Mai: But in the country, you are not in a hurry. (57)\_\_\_\_\_.  
We can say "no" to traffic jams there.

Nick: Well, (58)\_\_\_\_\_ are becoming much better. Anyway,  
we can ride a bicycle around (59)\_\_\_\_\_.

Mai: (60)\_\_\_\_\_. Maybe we can live in the town and go to the  
countryside at the weekend or during the summer holiday.

IX)-Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

The country and the city have advantages and (61)\_\_\_\_\_. People in the country live in more beautiful surroundings. They enjoy (62)\_\_\_\_\_ and quietness, and can do their work at their (63)\_\_\_\_\_ pace because no one is in a (64)\_\_\_\_\_. They live in larger, more comfortable houses, and their neighbors are more friendly, and ready to help them (65)\_\_\_\_\_ they need it. Their life, however, can be (66)\_\_\_\_\_ and they may be isolated, which is a serious problem (67)\_\_\_\_\_ they are ill or want to take children to school.

The city has all the services that the country lacks, but it (68)\_\_\_\_\_ has a lot of disadvantages. Cities are often polluted. They not (69)\_\_\_\_\_ have polluted air but also have noisy streets. Everyone is always in hurry and this

(70)\_\_\_\_\_ that people have no time to get to know each other and make friends.

- |     |           |              |              |                  |
|-----|-----------|--------------|--------------|------------------|
| 61. | A. joy    | B. enjoyment | C. happiness | D. disadvantages |
| 62. | A. quiet  | B. quietly   | C. peace     | D. peaceful      |
| 63. | A. less   | B. own       | C. just      | D. only          |
| 64. | A. hurry  | B. hurried   | C. hurriedly | D. hurrying      |
| 65. | A. when   | B. which     | C. what      | D. that          |
| 66. | A. bore   | B. bored     | C. boring    | D. bores         |
| 67. | A. unless | B. because   | C. although  | D. if            |
| 68. | A. also   | B. yet       | C. already   | D. so            |
| 69. | A. never  | B. ever      | C. hardly    | D. only          |
| 70. | A. aims   | B. means     | C. asks      | D. said          |

X)-Choose the item among A, B, C or D that best answers the question about the passage.

The country is more beautiful than a town and more pleasant to live in. Many people think so, and go to the country for the summer holidays though they cannot live there all the year round. Some have a cottage built in a village so that they can go there whenever they can find the time.

English villages are not all alike, but in some ways they are not very different from one another. Almost every village has a church, the round or square tower of which can be seen from many miles around. Surrounding the church is the church yard, where people are buried.

The village green is a wide stretch of grass, and houses or cottages are built round it. Country life is now fairly comfortable and many villages have running water brought through pipes into each house. Most villages are so close to some small towns that people can go there to buy what they can't find in the village shops.

71. When do city people often go to the country?
- |                     |                         |
|---------------------|-------------------------|
| A. At the weekends. | B. All the year round.  |
| C. At Christmas.    | D. The summer holidays. |
72. What is the advantage of city people when they have a cottage built in the village?

- A. They can have their houses rented.
- B. They can go to the country at weekends.
- C. They can go to the country whenever they can find the time.
- D. All are correct.

73. What is the common feature of English villages?

- A. They have a church.
- B. They have a church with a tall tower, and a village green.
- C. They have a village green.
- D. They have running water.

74. What is NOT mentioned in the life of English villages?

- |                |               |            |          |
|----------------|---------------|------------|----------|
| A. The village | B. The church | C. Running | D. The   |
| green          |               | water      | Internet |

75. What can villagers do when their villages are close to small towns?

- A. They can go there to buy whatever they want.
- B. They can go there to buy cheaper things.
- C. They can go there to buy what is not found in the village shops.
- D. They can go there to buy luxury goods.

XI)-Use the words or phrases given to write meaningful sentences.

76. Villagers/ usually earn/ living/ farming/ raising animals/ making handicrafts.

---

---

77. They/ live/ a small community/ a temple/ where great events/ such as/ festivals/ organized.

---

---

78. Villagers/ the Southern/ usually live/ houses/ built on stilts/ keep above flood waters.

---

---

79. Along/ coastal lines/ fishermen/ depend/ sea/ live on.

---

---



80. People/ Central Highlands/ and/ northern regions/ live/ growing rice/ rubber trees/ coffee/ tea.

---

---

# UNIT 3: PEOPLE IN VIETNAM

---

## A. PHONETICS

Read the following sentences aloud, and put the words in the cluster /sk/, /sp/ or /st/ into the correct column.

1. How do you spell your surname?
2. He is going to make a speech to city businessmen.
3. How much does your family spend on food each week?
4. If you don't pay the bill, our company will disconnect the Internet connectivity.
5. Don't let these little problems discourage you.
6. John did a lot of sport when he was at school.
7. Could you speak more slowly?
8. My brother is a stamp collector.
9. The house was built of grey stone.
10. You have ten minutes to complete the three tasks.
11. Potato crisps are my favourite snack.
12. They are building a new school in our area.
13. What is the best way to get to the museum from here?
14. I ask the shopkeeper how much the jacket is.
15. Indonesian food is rather spicy.
16. Scientists are hoping to discover the cause of that illness.
17. He's very skillful with his hands.
18. I'll send you the text as soon as I have any news.
19. The castle stands on a hill.
20. She always reads the children a bedtime story.

/sk/	/sp/	/st/

## B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I)-Fill in each blank of the passage with the correct word/phrase from the box.

<i>a tour</i>	<i>ethnic groups</i>	<i>little bridges</i>	<i>information</i>
<i>research</i>	<i>cultural heritage</i>	<i>stilt house</i>	<i>display area</i>

Vietnam Museum of Ethnology in Ha Noi offers an insight into 54 different ethnic groups of Viet Nam in an effort to preserve (1)\_\_\_\_\_.

The museum is full of (2)\_\_\_\_\_ about traditional Vietnamese ways of life of all the Vietnamese (3)\_\_\_\_\_.

The display hall shows everyday objects representing each ethnic group, a (4)\_\_\_\_\_ center, a library and an auditorium. Its indoor exhibition area provides you (5)\_\_\_\_\_ which includes the Viet, Muong, Tay, Thai, H'Mong, Yao, Khmer, Cham, and Hoa ethnic groups.

The outdoor (6)\_\_\_\_\_ presents a variety of Vietnamese homes including a Tay (7)\_\_\_\_\_ and a Viet house, each separated by a small stream and reached via (8)\_\_\_\_\_. The museum is suitable for children, and all documents and signs are translated into English and French.

II)-Complete the passage with the words given in the box.

<i>ethnic</i>	<i>for</i>	<i>villages</i>	<i>dress</i>	<i>valleys</i>
<i>home</i>	<i>at</i>	<i>with</i>	<i>provide</i>	<i>their</i>

The villages surrounding Sa Pa are (1)\_\_\_\_\_ to several of Vietnam's 54 ethnic minority groups, each with their own distinctive (2)\_\_\_\_\_, customs and dialects. These tribes can all be seen (3)\_\_\_\_\_ the weekend market in Sa Pa town to trade (4)\_\_\_\_\_ one another. Apart from its fascinating (5)\_\_\_\_\_ diversity, Sa Pa is also famous (6)\_\_\_\_\_ its trekking. With Vietnam's highest peak, Mt. Fansipan (3,143m) only 9km away the (7)\_\_\_\_\_ and mountains (8)\_\_\_\_\_ the perfect backdrop for some great treks. Some of the (9)\_\_\_\_\_ now have local stays where you can stay overnight with a family in (10)\_\_\_\_\_ traditional home.

III)-Fill in each blank with *a*, *an*, or *the* to complete the following passage.

### Ethnic Groups

Vietnam is (1)\_\_\_\_\_ multi-nationality country with 54 ethnic groups. The Viet (Kinh) people account for 87% of (2)\_\_\_\_\_ country's population and mainly inhabit (3)\_\_\_\_\_ Red River Delta, (4)\_\_\_\_\_ central coastal delta, (5)\_\_\_\_\_ Mekong Delta and major cities. (6)\_\_\_\_\_ other 53 ethnic minority groups, totaling over 8 million people, are scattered over mountain areas spreading from the North to the South.

(7)\_\_\_\_\_ number of ethnic minorities had mastered some farming techniques. They grew rice plants in swamped paddy fields and carried out irrigation. Others went hunting, fishing, collecting and lived (8)\_\_\_\_\_ semi-nomadic life. Each group has its own culture, diverse and special.

However, (9)\_\_\_\_\_ evident gap in the material and moral life has indeed still existed between peoples living in the deltas and those living in mountain areas as well as among ethnic minorities themselves. (10)\_\_\_\_\_ Vietnamese government has worked out specific policies and special treatments in order to help mountainous people catching up with lowland people, and made great efforts to develop and preserve traditional cultural identities of each ethnic minority group.

IV)-Fill each blank with *a*, *an*, or *the* to complete the following passage.

(1)\_\_\_\_\_ Lo Lo ethnic group can be divided into Flower Lo Lo and Black Lo Lo. Living in Lung Cu since ancient time, the Lo Lo people have made many efforts in making (2)\_\_\_\_\_ homeland suitable for farming. (3)\_\_\_\_\_ Lo Lo folkloric culture is very rich and unique, demonstrated with dances, songs, legends. (4)\_\_\_\_\_ Lo Lo calendar divides a year into 11 months, each corresponding to (5)\_\_\_\_\_ animal's name. Decorations on their turbans, shirts, skirts and trousers are particularly colourful.

(6)\_\_\_\_\_ ancient bronze drums are very important. (7)\_\_\_\_\_ head of each family is entitled to keep the drums which are used only during funerals or festivals to maintain rhythms for dances. The Lo Lo people are among (8)\_\_\_\_\_ few ethnic groups in Vietnam who still use bronze drums, (9)\_\_\_\_\_ traditional musical instrument closely associated with (10)\_\_\_\_\_ legend about the Flood.

V)-Read the passage, make questions for the underlined words of the following answers.

In 2006, the house of a local family in Dong Van District, Ha Giang Province was chosen for the background of the film "The Story of Pao". From distance, the house

looks beautiful as a painting. Bushes of wild but beautiful flowers in blossom in the right and an old learning cherry blossom tree at the gate create a romantic scene for the house. The film is about the life of a Hmong girl named Pao. She was raised by her stepmother because her real mother left her when she was a little. One day, her stepmother died in an accident, and she began to look for her birth mother.

1. ?

The house was chosen for the background of the film in 2006.

2. ?

The house is in Dong Van District, Ha Giang Province.

3. ?

The film is about the life of a Hmong girl named Pao.

4. ?

She was raised by her stepmother because her real mother left her when she was little.

5. ?

She began to look for her birth mother when her stepmother died in an accident.

VI)-Make a questions for the underlined words of these answers.

1. ?

The Ha Nhi ethnic group has about 12,500 inhabitants.

2. \_\_\_\_\_ ?

They live in the provinces of Lai Chau and Lao Cai.

3. \_\_\_\_\_ ?

The Ha Nhi mainly worship their ancestors.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ ?

They live on rice cultivation of burnt-over land or terraced fields.

5. \_\_\_\_\_ ?

They use ploughs and harrows pulled by oxen and buffaloes to work in the fields.

6. \_\_\_\_\_ ?

The gardens are often close to their houses.

### C. SPEAKING

**Talk with a partner. One plays the role of a reporter asking the questions, and the other answers with the questions below.**

A: (1) \_\_\_\_\_

B: The Hmong speak a language that belongs to the Hmong-Dao language family.

A: (2) \_\_\_\_\_

B: They grow mainly corn, rice, and wheat.

A: (3) \_\_\_\_\_

B: They also plant lotus, potatoes, vegetable, peanut, sesame, beans, etc.

A: (4) \_\_\_\_\_

B: The Hmong raise water buffaloes, cows, pigs, chickens, and horses.

A: (5) \_\_\_\_\_

B: The horse is the most effective source of transportation in these mountainous areas.

A: (6) \_\_\_\_\_

B: The Hmong handicraft is famous for embroidery, blacksmithing, and the making of horse saddles, wooden furniture, and silver jewelry.

A: (7) \_\_\_\_\_

B: The Hmong's New Year is in December, about one month earlier than Vietnamese Tet.

A: (8) \_\_\_\_\_

B: During the New Year's Festival, villagers play shuttlecock, swing, flute and sing and dance at public areas around the villages.

#### **D. READING**

I)-Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

#### **Communal House (*Rong* House)**

The *Rong* House can only be (1)\_\_\_\_\_ in villages to the north of the Central Highlands, especially in Gia Lai and Kon Tum provinces. It is a large, imposing, beautifully decorated stilt house built (2)\_\_\_\_\_ the middle of the village. It is where community activities (3)\_\_\_\_\_, meetings, wedding ceremonies, or praying ceremonies. It is also the place for reception of guests. The *Rong* House of each ethnic

group has its own architectural style, design, and décor. Yet there are shared (4)\_\_\_\_\_. In the village, it is often (5)\_\_\_\_\_ house roofed with yellow-dried thatch leaves and having 8 big wood columns. The rafters are decorated with patterns of bright colours, depicting religious scenes, legendary stories about ancient heroes, stylized animals, and other familiar things of the village life. The most distinction of the décor of the *Rong* House is the (6)\_\_\_\_\_ of the brilliant God of Sun. The *Rong* House is a (7)\_\_\_\_\_ of the culture of Central Highlanders, an age-old and stable culture. The bigger the house, the wealthier the village is. It is a (8)\_\_\_\_\_ of the whole village.

- |    |               |             |                |             |
|----|---------------|-------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1. | A. find       | B. found    | C. to find     | D. finding  |
| 2. | A. on         | B. at       | C. in          | D. under    |
| 3. | A. take place | B. take on  | C. happens     | D. occurs   |
| 4. | A. designs    | B. cultures | C. customs     | D. features |
| 5. | A. a big      | B. a bigger | C. the biggest | D. biggest  |
| 6. | A. painting   | B. photo    | C. image       | D. portrait |
| 7. | A. signal     | B. symbol   | C. sign        | D. scene    |
| 8. | A. design     | B. respect  | C. proud       | D. pride    |

II)-Read the following passage, and answer the questions below.

### **Duong Lam: An ancient Vietnamese village**

Duong Lam Village is located in Duong Lam Commune at a 45 km distance from Ha Noi. It is the birthplace of two kings in the history of Vietnam, Phung Hung (or Bo Cai Dai Vuong) and Ngo Quyen, who opened up the long-term self-control and independence period of Vietnam after Bach Dang Victory in the year 938.

All houses, gates, village gates and wells are built of laterite creating an architectural complex, a unique village that is typical for villages in the midlands in the North of Vietnam.

At present, there are still nearly old 200 houses and many other historical monuments such as Phung Hung Temple, Ngo Quyen Royal Tomb, Mong Phu Communal House, Ho Gam Hill at which Phung Hung killed tigers to secure villagers and the temple at which the diplomat Giang Van Minh is worshiped.

1. Where is Duong Lam Village?

---

2. Who were the two kings whose birthplace is Duong Lam Village?

---

3. What is Duong Lam typical for?

---

4. How many old houses are there in Duong Lam?

---

5. What are the famous historical monuments there?

---

### E. WRITING

**Write full sentences about the Cham ethnic group, using the words and phrases given.**

1. The Cham ethnic group/ a population/ about 100,000.

---

2. They/ live mostly/ the coast/ between Ninh Thuan/ Binh Thuan Provinces/ or/ the Cambodian border/ around Chau Doc.

---

3. The Cham/ a tradition/ wet rice cultivation.

---

4. Handicrafts/ fairly well-developed/ especially silkworm textiles/ handmade pottery wares.

---

5. Both men/ women/ wear/ long one-piece sarongs/ cloth wrappers.

---

6. Main colour/ their daily dress/ cotton white.

---

7. Chief means/ transporting goods/ farm produce/ back-basket.

---



8. Most important festival/ called *Bon Kate*/ held/ near the Cham towers/ the tenth month/ the Lunar year.
- 
- 

TEST (UNIT 3)

I)-Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. The Gong Festival is held \_\_\_\_\_ in the Central Highlands.  
A. year                      B. yearly                      C. annual                      D. annually
2. \_\_\_\_\_ does Hoa Ban Festival take place? – In Lai Chau.  
A. What                      B. Where                      C. When                      D. How
3. It is typical of the cultural life of \_\_\_\_\_ Thai people  
A. some                      B. a                      C. the                      D. Ø
4. \_\_\_\_\_ do the cattle provide for the nomads? – Dairy products, meat, and clothing.  
A. What                      B. Where                      C. Why                      D. How
5. The crops \_\_\_\_\_ on the weather.  
A. depend                      B. depend                      C. affect heavy                      D. affect heavily  
heavy                      heavily
6. Mai studies Maths a little bit \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. bad                      B. badly                      C. good                      D. smartly
7. During the festival, they fly many \_\_\_\_\_ kites in different shapes and sizes  
A. colour                      B. colourless                      C. colourful                      D. colouring
8. An old woman was \_\_\_\_\_ the goats up the mountainside.  
A. riding                      B. taking                      C. herding                      D. running
9. \_\_\_\_\_ is the festival celebrated? – Every year.  
A. When                      B. How often                      C. How                      D. What
10. There are no high building to block \_\_\_\_\_ in our village.  
A. view                      B. a view                      C. some view                      D. the view

II)-Complete the following sentences with the correct words with the cluster /sk/, /sp/ or /st/ from the table, and then read aloud the sentences.

<i>disk</i>	<i>sports</i>	<i>stone</i>	<i>ask</i>	<i>best</i>	<i>speech</i>
<i>spelling</i>	<i>school</i>	<i>speak</i>	<i>stamps</i>	<i>spend</i>	<i>skill</i>

11. The child lost the power of \_\_\_\_\_ from birth.
12. I am going to \_\_\_\_\_ the weekend at the grandparents' house.
13. I got lost and I had to \_\_\_\_\_ somebody the way.
14. Which \_\_\_\_\_ do you like playing?
15. The boy picked up a \_\_\_\_\_ and threw it into the river.
16. The course will help you to develop your reading \_\_\_\_\_.
17. Nam is very poor at \_\_\_\_\_.
18. Does anyone here \_\_\_\_\_ French?
19. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a device for storing information on a computer.
20. Do you have to wear a \_\_\_\_\_ uniform?
21. Who in the class is \_\_\_\_\_ at maths?
22. He has been collecting \_\_\_\_\_ from many countries since he was eight.

III)-Use the correct form of the words in brackets to finish the sentences.

23. Terraced rice fields in Sa Pa are slopes claimed for cultivation in hilly or \_\_\_\_\_ areas. (mountain)
24. For the Muong, rice is also the main \_\_\_\_\_ crop. (agriculture)
25. The Muong call their \_\_\_\_\_ calendar "sach doi", which is made from 12 bamboo sticks that represent the 12 months. (tradition)
26. Viet Nam is a country of tremendous \_\_\_\_\_ with 54 ethnic groups. (diverse)
27. The ethnic minority groups in Viet Nam have been living in \_\_\_\_\_ co-existence. (peace)

IV)-Read the following facts about the Khmer ethnic people, and talk about them with a partner.

- Population: over one million
- Inhabitation areas: Soc Trang, Tra Vinh, Can Tho, Kien Giang, and An Giang provinces

- Customs: young Khmer people often go to pagodas to study and improve their virtues and knowledge.
- Production activities: wet rice cultivation. animal husbandry, weaving, pottery and sugar making from the “Thot Not” tree
- Festivals: “Chon Cho Nam Tho May”(New Year Festival), Buddha’s Birthday, “Don Ta”(Forgive the Crimes of the Dead), and “Ooc Om Bok”(Moon worship)

A: What/ population/ Khmer ethnic group?

(28) \_\_\_\_\_

B: (29) \_\_\_\_\_

A: Where/ the Khmer/ live?

(30) \_\_\_\_\_

B: (31) \_\_\_\_\_

A: What/ their customs?

(32) \_\_\_\_\_

B: (33) \_\_\_\_\_

A: What/ they/ do/ live on?

(34) \_\_\_\_\_

B: (35) \_\_\_\_\_

A: What/ their main festivals?

(36) \_\_\_\_\_

B: (37) \_\_\_\_\_

V)-Complete each blank in the following passage with the correct word/ phrase from the box.

*marriage*

*share*

*a funeral house*

*branch*

*stilt house*

*ethnic minorities*

*ceremonies*

*musical instruments*

**Jarai (or Giarai)**

The largest (38)\_\_\_\_\_ group on the Central Highlands is the Jarai, with a population of about 250,000. It is thought that Jarai people left the coastal plains around 2000 years ago, settling on the fertile plateau around Pleiku, and in Kon Tum Province. Some ethnologists think that Cham people are in fact a (39)\_\_\_\_\_ of the Jarai, and they certainly (40)\_\_\_\_\_ common linguistic traits.

Villagers are often named for a nearby river, stream or tribal chief. In the centre of each can be found a large (41)\_\_\_\_\_, which acts as a kind of community centre where the council of elders and their elected chief meet. House are traditionally built on stilt, facing north. Jarai women typically propose (42)\_\_\_\_\_ to men through a matchmaker, who delivers the prospective groom a cooper bracelet.

Perhaps more than any of Vietnam's other hill tribes, the Jarai are famous for their (43)\_\_\_\_\_, from stringed "gongs" to bamboo tubes, which act as wind flutes and percussion.

Animist beliefs are still strong and the Jarai world is filled with spirits, the most famous of which are the kings of Water, Fire and Wind, represented by shamans who are involved in rain-making (44)\_\_\_\_\_ and other rituals. Funeral rites are particularly complex and expensive: after the burial, (45)\_\_\_\_\_ is built over the grave and evocative sculptures of people, birds and objects from everyday life are placed inside.

*Note: **evocative** (adj) = making you remember or imagine something pleasant.*

VI)-Fill in each blank with *a*, *an*, or *the* to complete the following passage.

(46)\_\_\_\_\_ history of Da Nang Museum of Cham Sculpture started in 1891 when (47)\_\_\_\_\_ French scientist began to collect Cham sculptures that had been discovered in scattered areas of Quang Nam Province and brought them to Da Nang.

(48)\_\_\_\_\_ first museum building was designed by French architects, and construction began in 1915 and was finished by May 1916.

(49)\_\_\_\_\_ Museum has played (50)\_\_\_\_\_ important role in preserving sculpture items featuring the cultural, spiritual and ritual lives of the Cham people. They arranged (51)\_\_\_\_\_ displays in order of (52)\_\_\_\_\_ areas where (53)\_\_\_\_\_ objects were found.

VII)-Make questions for the underlined words in the following answers.

54. Ethnic groups in Central Highlands have the custom of making funeral houses and statues for the dead.  
\_\_\_\_\_?
55. People in the Central Highlands believe that man after death will move to another world.  
\_\_\_\_\_?
56. If the dead were not buried in beautiful graves, they would return and harass the living.  
\_\_\_\_\_?
57. Making funeral houses and cutting wooden statues are the way of building palaces and supply slaves to the dead in the other world.  
\_\_\_\_\_?
58. People in the Central Highlands use three tools to make statues.  
\_\_\_\_\_?
59. The topics for funeral statues are taken from modern life.  
\_\_\_\_\_?

VIII)-Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

The Muong (60)\_\_\_\_\_ ethnic roots with the Vietnamese people and their language is classified in the Vietnamese-Muong language branch. The Muong live in (61)\_\_\_\_\_ areas which have abundant land for (62)\_\_\_\_\_ wet rice. In a Muong hamlet, stilt houses are located in the shade of big trees, huddle against the mountain, and (63)\_\_\_\_\_ out on vast rice fields. A Muong house is designed to maximize convenient use and air ventilation to counter the warm, humid mountain climate.

The Muong's (64)\_\_\_\_\_ is special. Men often wear a round-neck shirt which opens in the front and has two pockets. Their pants have large trouser legs. The Muong women wear a long, black dress and a white or brown shirt with a line of buttons in the front and long sleeves. They wind a white or indigo headscarf (65)\_\_\_\_\_ their head.

The Muong have (66)\_\_\_\_\_ folk arts including folk songs and poems, sorcerer's worshipping songs, tales, and riddle songs. The gong is (67)\_\_\_\_\_ popular musical instrument (68)\_\_\_\_\_ the flute, the (69)\_\_\_\_\_ violin, the drum, and the panpipe.

- |     |                |               |                |                  |
|-----|----------------|---------------|----------------|------------------|
| 60. | A. have        | B. share      | C. divide      | D. cut           |
| 61. | A. mountain    | B. mount      | C. mountainous | D. hill          |
| 62. | A. growing     | B. harvesting | C. putting     | D. raising       |
| 63. | A. watch       | B. see        | C. stare       | D. look          |
| 64. | A. cloth       | B. material   | C. costume     | D. costumes      |
| 65. | A. out         | B. around     | C. at          | D. above         |
| 66. | A. diverse     | B. diversity  | C. variety     | D. range         |
| 67. | A. most        | B. the most   | C. more        | D. the more      |
| 68. | A. together    | B. as well    | C. along       | D. along with    |
| 69. | A. two strings | B. two-string | C. two string  | D. second-string |

IX)-Read the passage, and then choose the best answer.

### **The Space of Gong Culture in Central Highlands**

The space of gong culture in Central Highlands of Viet Nam covers 5 provinces of Kon Tum, Gia Lai, Dak Lak, Dak Nong and Lam Dong. The masters of gong culture are the ethnic groups of Ba Na, Xo Dang, M'Nong, Co Ho, Ro Mam, E De, Giarai... The gong performances are always closely tied to community cultural rituals and ceremonies of the ethnic groups in Central Highlands. Many researchers have classified gongs as ceremonial musical instrument and the gong sounds as a means to communicate with deities and gods.

The gongs are made of bronze. Their diameter is from 20 cm to 60cm or from 90cm to 120cm. A set of gongs consists of 2 to 12 or 13 units and even to 18 or 20 units in some places.

In most of the ethnic groups, namely Giarai, Ede Kpah, Ba Na, Xo Dang, Brau, Co Ho, etc., only males are allowed to play gongs. However, in others such as Ma and M'Nong groups, both males and females can play gongs. Few ethnic groups (for example, E de Bih), gongs are performed by women only.

As for the majority of ethnic groups in Central Highlands, gongs are musical instruments of sacred power. It is believed that every gong is the settlement of a god who gets more powerful as the gong is older. Therefore, gongs are associated to all events in one's life, such as the **inauguration** of new houses, funerals, buffalo sacrifice, new harvest, ceremony to pray for people's and cattle's health, ceremony to see off soldiers to the front, and the victory celebration.

70. Gong culture can be found in \_\_\_\_\_.

- |                      |                          |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| E. Kon Tum           | F. Kon Tum and Gia Lai   |
| G. Central Highlands | H. highlands in Viet Nam |

71. It is thought that the gong sounds can help us \_\_\_\_\_.

- |                                  |                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------|
| A. have a relation with the gods | B. enjoy ourselves |
| C. communicate with nature       | D. harvest crops   |

72. All of the following statements are true except that \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. the matter whether males or females play gongs depends on the ethnic groups
- B. the diameter of gongs can be varied
- C. a set of gongs is not more than 10 units
- D. the gongs are made of bronze

73. Gongs are believed to have a sacred power because \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. the gong is older than a god
- B. a god will make gongs more powerful
- C. the statement was made
- D. they are associated to all events in one's life

74. The word "**inauguration**" in paragraph 4 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- |             |            |
|-------------|------------|
| A. building | B. finding |
| C. sale     | D. opening |

X)-Write full sentences to show the way how to cook “Thang Co”.

**How to cook “Thang Co” – a speciality of Hmong**

75. It/ quite simple/ cook Thang Co.

\_\_\_\_\_

76. The horse meat and organs/ washed/ and/ mixed/ 12 traditional spices: cardamom, anise flower, cinnamon, ginger and some secret species...

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

77. Then/ all meat and organs/ put/ a large pan/ fried.

\_\_\_\_\_

78. Wait until/ meat/ become/ dry/ and/ pour water/ pan/ and swimmer within more than an hour.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

79. The organs/ such as/ heart, liver, blood, bowel, meat, bone/ added later/ then/ simmered and put more vegetables.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

80. The pans/ Thang Co/ highland market fairs/ usually enough/ a few dozen/ people.

\_\_\_\_\_

**TEST YOURSELF 1**

I)-Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- |                  |              |              |               |
|------------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. A. harmful    | B. slowly    | C. cloudy    | D. unique     |
| 2. A. worship    | B. belong    | C. enjoy     | D. behave     |
| 3. A. alternate  | B. entertain | C. symbolize | D. cultivate  |
| 4. A. heritage   | B. museum    | C. decorate  | D. blackberry |
| 5. A. minorities | B. populated | C. activity  | D. experience |

II)-Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

6. Yoga helps us learn \_\_\_\_\_ to co-ordinate breathing and movement.
- |         |         |        |        |
|---------|---------|--------|--------|
| A. what | B. when | C. why | D. how |
|---------|---------|--------|--------|



7. Teenagers enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ to music and \_\_\_\_\_ out with friends.  
A. listen – hang    B. to listen – to    C. listening – hang    D. listening – hanging
8. \_\_\_\_\_ should children do yoga too?  
A. Why    B. When    C. What    D. How
9. Don't worry. It is \_\_\_\_\_ to travel to that village event at night.  
A. safe    B. unsafe    C. difficult    D. inconvenient
10. Life in a small town is \_\_\_\_\_ than that in a big city.  
A. peaceful    B. much peaceful    C. less peaceful    D. much more peaceful
11. The boys often help their parents to \_\_\_\_\_ water from the village well.  
A. gather    B. collect    C. give    D. find
12. In the Central Highlands, the biggest and tallest house in the village is the \_\_\_\_\_ house.  
A. communicati on    B. community    C. communal    D. commune
13. The Viet people have many \_\_\_\_\_ customs and crafts.  
A. tradition    B. traditional    C. culture    D. customary
14. \_\_\_\_\_ month is the Hoa Ban Festival of the Thai people held in?  
A. When    B. Which    C. How many    D. How often
15. The \_\_\_\_\_ on display in Da Nang Museum of Cham Sculpture are vert interesting.  
A. items    B. goods    C. products    D. shows

III)-Complete the following sentences with the correct words from the table, and then read aloud the sentences. Practise saying the words with the cluster /bl/ or /kl/.

<i>classical</i>	<i>blouse</i>	<i>cleaning</i>	<i>blanket</i>	<i>blackberry</i>
<i>clerk</i>	<i>blank</i>	<i>block</i>	<i>clearly</i>	<i>blind</i>

16. Fill in each \_\_\_\_\_ in the following exercise.
17. "It's cold tonight – can I have another \_\_\_\_\_?"
18. She has been \_\_\_\_\_ since her birth.

19. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a piece of clothing that women wear.
20. My shoes need \_\_\_\_\_.
21. It was so dark that we couldn't see the road \_\_\_\_\_.
22. I prefer \_\_\_\_\_ pie for desserts.
23. He plays \_\_\_\_\_ music, as well as pop and jazz.
24. Some new buildings \_\_\_\_\_ the view from the window.
25. The \_\_\_\_\_ gave us the key to the laboratory.

IV)-Circle the correct answers in the text.

Back in 2006, 79-year-old Peter Oakley made a film of himself talking about his life experiences and <sup>26</sup>**uploaded/ downloaded** it onto the web. He used a new <sup>27</sup>**online community/ video-sharing site**, YouTube (which was then only one year old). He called the film "First Try", and the <sup>28</sup>**blog/ online community** loved it. Within a week, Peter was the number one use on YouTube, making him an Internet celebrity. The film has now had nearly three million <sup>29</sup>**hits/ websites**. Peter <sup>30</sup>**posted/ searched** more films online about himself and his life, and called the series "Telling it All". He also has his own <sup>31</sup>**hits/ website** (askgeriatric.com), where you can read his <sup>32</sup>**blog/ video sharing site**. Oh, yes, and you can <sup>33</sup>**download/ post** Peter's song from it – he's also in a rock band!

*Note:* hit (n) = a request to use a web page, and we can know the number looking at that page.

V)-Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of the word in brackets.

34. Some regions in Central Highlands in Viet Nam are not \_\_\_\_\_.  
(populate)
35. He spoke \_\_\_\_\_ about the life in the countryside in Viet Nam. (optimistic)
36. All of us can realize the \_\_\_\_\_ atmosphere in the countryside life.  
(peace)
37. Some of the \_\_\_\_\_ have lived here all their lives. (village)
38. Having to wait for ten minutes was a minor \_\_\_\_\_. (convenient)

VI)-Complete the conversations, using the words or phrases given.

love	don't mind	hate	don't really like	quite like
------	------------	------	-------------------	------------

A Nick: Jenny, please help me with the washing up.

Jenny: Why? There's not much.

Nick: I know, but I (39)\_\_\_\_\_ doing it. It's awful.

B Mum: Let me help you.

Sarah: No, that's OK. I (40)\_\_\_\_\_ doing the cooking. It's one of my favourite hobbies.

C Phong: What are you doing?

Phuc: I'm tidying my room.

Phong: What? Still?

Phuc: Yeah, I (41)\_\_\_\_\_ doing it. It's a bit boring.

D John: And we also need lots of drinks. Shall I come with you?

Mai: No, I'm fine. I really (42)\_\_\_\_\_ shopping.

E Mum: Ok, give me the next shirt. I (43)\_\_\_\_\_ doing another one.

Mai: You really don't mind? How sweet of you.

VII)-Read the advertisements, and do the task that follows.

### Choosing a holiday activity

*Are you always bored in the holidays? Choose one of our fantastic holiday courses – have fun, learn something new and make friends! All our courses are five days.*

#### **Course 1: Join a band**

Do you love playing music, but you haven't got anyone to play with? This course is for you! Bring a musical instrument... your guitar, your violin... or just your voice! Meet other musicians and start a band. Learn to make music together.

#### **Course 2: Picture perfect**

This course teaches you how to take fantastic photographs using modern digital cameras. But it's not just photography... we also help you with your painting skills. Use your photos to paint personal pictures of people and scenery.

#### **Course 3: Plain sailing**

All you need to know about sailing. Don't bring equipment: we have everything you need. We take you to a beautiful area – only 30-minute drive – and we sail in every type of weather. You learn to sail in groups of five... so you make friends, too!

#### Course 4: A taste of Italy

Do you like Italian food? Do you want to learn how to prepare it? This course shows you how to make three simple tasty dishes. We have all the ingredients for delicious traditional Italian food. Have an amazing dinner party for your friends at the end of the course!

*Which course is good for people who:*

- |                                 |       |
|---------------------------------|-------|
| 44. want to meet new people?    | _____ |
| 45. like singing?               | _____ |
| 46. love cooking?               | _____ |
| 47. like art?                   | _____ |
| 48. like to be in the open air? | _____ |
| 49. love the sea?               | _____ |
| 50. like eating with friends?   | _____ |
| 51. play a musical instrument?  | _____ |

*(Some questions may have more than one answer.)*

VIII)-Complete each blank in the following passage with the correct word/ phrase from the box.

<i>use</i>	<i>designs</i>	<i>colors</i>	<i>slope</i>
<i>stream</i>	<i>tribe</i>	<i>takes</i>	<i>image</i>

#### Cat Cat Village – Sa Pa

Cat Cat Village is located on the Muong Hoa Valley, this is the village of Hmong hill (52)\_\_\_\_\_. It's not far from Sa Pa Town, about 3 km and it (53)\_\_\_\_\_ you 45 minutes to walk here. The village is on the (54)\_\_\_\_\_ of the hill and easy walking, rice and corn are grown here.

Visiting Cat Cat Village, we can have a chance to visit a big waterfall on the (55)\_\_\_\_\_ and the old Hydro-electric Power Station built by the French here. We can also see the (56)\_\_\_\_\_ of young women sitting by looms with colourful pieces of brocade decorated with designs of flowers and birds. When these pieces of

brocade are finished, they are dyed and embroidered with beautiful (57)\_\_\_\_\_. It is interesting that Hmong women (58)\_\_\_\_\_ plants and leaves to dye these brocade fabrics. And then they roll a round and smooth section of wood covered with wax on fabrics to polish them, making their (59)\_\_\_\_\_ durable.

IX)-Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank in the following passage.

My village is about 50 kilometers from the city center. It is a very (60)\_\_\_\_\_ place where people (61)\_\_\_\_\_ flowers and vegetables only. It is very famous of its pretty roses and picturesque scenes. The air is quite fresh, however, the smell of the roses make people (62)\_\_\_\_\_ cool. In spring, my village looks (63)\_\_\_\_\_ a carpet with plenty of colors. Tourists come to visit it so often. Nowadays, with electricity, it doesn't take the villagers much time (64)\_\_\_\_\_ the roses.

- |     |           |              |             |                |
|-----|-----------|--------------|-------------|----------------|
| 60. | A. beauty | B. beautiful | C. beautify | D. beautifully |
| 61. | A. plant  | B. plants    | C. grow up  | D. grows up    |
| 62. | A. feel   | B. feeling   | C. felt     | D. to feel     |
| 63. | A. as     | B. like      | C. alike    | D. same        |
| 64. | A. water  | B. watering  | C. to water | D. watered     |

X)-Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank in the following passage.

I live in a small village called Northville. There are about 2000 people here. I love the village (65)\_\_\_\_\_ it is very quiet and life is slowly and easy. The village is always clean; people look (66)\_\_\_\_\_ it with great care. The air is always clean, too. People are much more friendly here than in city because everyone (67)\_\_\_\_\_ the others, and if someone has a problem, there are always people who can help.

There are only a few things that I don't like about Northville. One thing is that we have not got many things to do in the evening; we haven't got (68)\_\_\_\_\_ cinemas or theaters. The other thing is that people always talk about (69)\_\_\_\_\_, and everyone knows what everyone is doing. But I still prefer village life to life in a big city.

- |     |          |             |               |          |
|-----|----------|-------------|---------------|----------|
| 65. | A. so    | B. although | C. because    | D. but   |
| 66. | A. for   | B. at       | C. up         | D. after |
| 67. | A. knows | B. know     | C. is knowing | D. knew  |

68. A. little                      B. some                      C. any                      D. few  
69. A. others                      B. other                      C. another                      D. one another

XI)-Choose the item among A, B, C or D that best answer the question about the passage.

The thing I liked most when I was small was the change of seasons. Spring, summer, autumn and winter – I could see them all come and go and each one was completely different. Now in the city, you can buy summer flowers in winter and eat the same vegetables all the year round. Whereas, in the country, I could only eat things at certain times of the year, for example, strawberries in June and turnips in winter. I lived my childhood with the seasons.

We also made most of our food and would never eat frozen or tinned food. Everything was fresh, so it must be better than the type of food I am taking now in the city. City people may think people in the country miss a lot of things about modern life. In fact, in my opinion they miss a lot more than people in the country, they miss real life.

70. What did the writer like most about living in the country?

- A. Flowers in spring                      B. Leaves in autumn.  
C. The wild animals and plants.                      D. The change of seasons.

71. What does the word “them” in line 2 refer to?

- A. Four seasons                      B. Winter and autumn  
C. Countryside people                      D. Plants

72. In the countryside which season can we buy strawberries?

- A. Spring                      B. Summer  
C. Autumn                      D. Winter

73. Why did the writer never eat tinned food when living in the country?

- A. Because it was frozen                      B. Because it was contaminated  
C. Because it was very fat                      D. Because it wasn't very fresh

74. Which of the following sentences is NOT true?

- A. People in the city can grow vegetables all year round.
- B. In the countryside turnips are grown in winter
- C. The writer often eat frozen and tinned food now.
- D. Many city people think they live better than those in the country.

XII)-Fill the gaps with the words/ phrases in the box to give your opinion about the best leisure activity. More than one word can be suitable for some gaps.

<i>In addition</i>	<i>also</i>	<i>As I have noted</i>
<i>In my opinion</i>	<i>Besides</i>	<i>I think</i>

My favourite leisure activity is listening to music.

(75)\_\_\_\_\_, listening to music not only helps me relax but also provides me with musical knowledge. I (76)\_\_\_\_\_ like the time that I can lie lazily in bed, put on the small earphone with my iPod and enjoy any favourite songs of many kinds of music: pop music, hip-hop, rock or jazz... I like pop music very much because I think it is gentle and suitable for teenagers. I listen to rock music when I am sad and after that I feel cheerful and happy. (77)\_\_\_\_\_ music from other countries is also good for teenagers to understand other cultures. (78)\_\_\_\_\_ that, the lyrics are easy to understand and interesting. (79)\_\_\_\_\_, it can improve my English and listening skills.

(80)\_\_\_\_\_, music is an important part of my life and it helps me love my life more.

# UNIT 4: OUR CUSTOMS AND TRADITIONS

---

## A. PHONETICS

**I)-Read the following sentences aloud, and put the words in the cluster /spr/, /str/ into the correct column.**

1. Spray is liquid in a special container that is forced out under pressure when you push a button
2. Keep your back straight.
3. Spread out the map on the table so we can see it.
4. My mother told me not to talk to strange men.
5. The seeds will sprout out in a few days.
6. I had to ask a stranger to help me with my suitcase.
7. I met Nick in the street this morning.
8. Spring roll is my favourite dish.
9. She is a women of great physical strength.
10. He was under a lot of stress before the final exams.
11. There is a feeling of spring in the air.
12. My parents are not very strict with us.
13. A spreadsheet is a computer program for working with rows of numbers.
14. Chris Ronaldo is a famous striker from Real Madrid.
15. I need some strings to tie round this parcel.
16. Zebras have black and white stripes.
17. Read the instructions carefully before you use the digital camera.
18. Pedestrian crossing is a special place where traffic must stop to allow people to walk across.
19. We would like strawberries and cream after dinner.
20. The elderly folk artists would like their offspring to join the club to practice the old style of singing

/spr/	/str/




II)-Underline the words with /spr/ and circle the words with /str/. Read the sentences aloud.

1. Dirty drinking water encourages the spread of disease.
2. A very strange thing happened to me on the way home.
3. The doctor told her that she was suffering from stress.
4. Nobody knew why he was doing the strange things.
5. What a nice spring day!
6. Khau Vai Commune is located in Meo Vac District.
7. Be sure to look both ways when you cross the street.
8. Yuri Gagarin was the first astronaut.
9. Newsprint is the cheap paper that newspapers are printed on.
10. We felt very frustrated at the sight of people's wearing shorts when going to the pagoda.
11. The bird spreads its wings.
12. It takes about three days for the beans to sprout.

## B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I)-Complete the sentences with the words/phrases from the box.

<i>a tradition</i>	<i>provider</i>	<i>death</i>	<i>gift</i>
<i>according to</i>	<i>clocks</i>	<i>cultural</i>	<i>a temple</i>
<i>unlucky</i>	<i>take off</i>	<i>the custom of</i>	<i>break with tradition</i>

1. Always take you shoes off before you enter\_\_\_\_\_ in India.
2. Feet are considered dirty in India, so \_\_\_\_\_ your shoes before you step into someone's house.
3. In India, when the mother works in the fields or a factory, a grandmother commonly is the chief\_\_\_\_\_ of daytime care for a small child.
4. (4a)\_\_\_\_\_ tradition, the arranged marriage is a traditional feature of every community in India, but now in big cities young couples (4b)\_\_\_\_\_ by following "love marriages".

5. There is \_\_\_\_\_ that Indian people never eat with their left hands, and never pass on anything to an Indian with your left hand.
6. The lion dance is one of the famous Chinese \_\_\_\_\_ traditions.
7. When greeting, the Chinese have \_\_\_\_\_ bowing, folding their hands on chest.
8. When the Chinese come on a visit, they usually give a small \_\_\_\_\_, such as some wine, tea or candy.
9. If you happen to visit a Chinese family, you should bear in mind not to give an odd number of presents, because odd numbers are considered \_\_\_\_\_ in China.
10. You should not give presents in number of 4 or in black-and-white color, which are considered as symbols of \_\_\_\_\_ in China.
11. The Chinese should not be presented with \_\_\_\_\_ because they also symbolize death and funerals.

II)-Rewrite the sentences given about the Thai traditions and customs, using the following expressions. You can add some words or make changes.

*there's a tradition that*

*according to the tradition*

*follow the tradition of*

*break with tradition by*

*have the custom of*

1. Visitors should dress neatly in all religious shrines and temples, and never enter in shorts or sleeveless shirts.

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

2. Never climb onto a Buddha image to take a photograph or do anything that may indicate a lack of respect.

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. A monk is not allowed to touch money, so if a man wishes to give money to a monk, he must place it in the bowl.

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. The “wai” – a slight bow with the palms together and the fingertips touching the face – is a way of showing respects or thanks, but you can smile or nod.

---

---

5. Shoes should be removed when entering a private Thai home as a sign of respect.

---

---

6. You should never point your feet at someone or an object as this is considered disrespectful.

---

---

7. It is considered very rude to touch people on the head, but now you can touch young children on their heads.

---

---

8. You can use the word “Khun” as the best way to address someone and it is used in front of the name, usually the first name.

---

---

III)-Give advice with “*should*” or *shouldn’t*, using the cues about table manners in Japan.

1. Don’t drink at a dinner party until everyone is served

---

2. Raise your drink and say “kampai!” (cheers) before you drink

---

3. Use a small wet cloth at most Japanese restaurant to wash your hands before eating

---

4. Don’t use it as a napkin or to touch any part of your face.

---

5. Use chopsticks during the meal

---

6. Don’t tip any situation in Japan

---

IV)-Complete the sentences, using “*have to*” and the verbs from the box in the correct form either positive or negative.

<i>open</i>	<i>talk</i>	<i>stop</i>	<i>take</i>
<i>decide</i>	<i>get up</i>	<i>send</i>	<i>explain</i>

1. We \_\_\_\_\_ early at the weekends. (negative)
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ which job I want before the end of the week. (positive)
3. We \_\_\_\_\_ the bus into the city center. We can walk. (negative)
4. She \_\_\_\_\_ the shop at 9 o'clock every morning. (positive)
5. You \_\_\_\_\_ quietly in the library. (positive)
6. You \_\_\_\_\_ the letter to him by post. I will see him tomorrow and I will give it to him then. (negative)
7. You \_\_\_\_\_ it to me. I understand the problem. (negative)
8. We \_\_\_\_\_ talking when the lesson starts. (positive)

V)-Complete the tips about Vietnamese table manners by filling in each blank with “*should*” or “*shouldn't*”.

1. When having a meal, you \_\_\_\_\_ pass all dishes using both hands.
2. You \_\_\_\_\_ place your chopsticks on the designated chopsticks holder when taking a break to drink or speak.
3. You \_\_\_\_\_ stick your chopsticks vertically in the middle of the rice bowl.
4. You \_\_\_\_\_ eat directly from the serving dish.
5. You \_\_\_\_\_ try every dish that is served before obtaining more of your favourite ones.
6. You \_\_\_\_\_ consume only meat, as it is the most expensive ingredient of the meal.
7. You \_\_\_\_\_ finish the food put on your plate because this shows respect for the cook and is not wasteful.
8. You \_\_\_\_\_ refuse any food offerings despite being full.
9. You \_\_\_\_\_ inform the host that you are full prior to being offered another dish.
10. When you finish a meal, you \_\_\_\_\_ place your chopsticks on top of your rice bowl.

VI)-What kinds of behavior are acceptable in Viet Nam? Fill in the blanks with “You should” or “You shouldn’t”.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ introduce yourself to newcomers in your class.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ arrive on time when you’re invited to someone’s house.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ blow your nose in public.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ chew gum while talking to someone.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ call a teacher by his or her first name.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ stand up when the teacher enters the classroom.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ place the chopsticks on your bowl when you finish the meal.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ visit your classmates without calling first.

### C. SPEAKING

I)-Rearrange the sentences to make a conversation by writing the correct number (2-8) in each blank. The conversation starts with number 1.

\_\_\_1\_\_\_ A. Nick: Guess what! I just got invited to my English teacher’s house for dinner!

\_\_\_\_\_ B. Mai: Well, it’s also the custom in Viet Nam to bring a small gift.

\_\_\_\_\_ C. Nick: And is it alright to bring a friend along?

\_\_\_\_\_ D. Nick: Yes, but what do you do when you’re invited to someone’s here?

\_\_\_\_\_ E. Mai: Well, if you want to bring someone along, you should call first and ask if it’s OK.

\_\_\_\_\_ D. Mai: Oh, how nice!

\_\_\_\_\_ G. Nick: Really? Like what?

\_\_\_\_\_ H. Mai: Oh, maybe some fruit or a box of candy or biscuits.

II)-Read the interview between the reporter (R) and Tobey Maguire (TM), the actor who plays Spiderman, and complete it with the correct past form of “have to”. Practise the conversation with your partner.

R: Was Spiderman is a difficult part to play?

TM: Yes, I (1. be)\_\_\_\_\_ fit so I (2. train)\_\_\_\_\_ for six months before the film started.

R: What time \_\_\_\_\_ (3. you/ be) at the film studio in the morning?

TM: I (4. start) \_\_\_\_\_ at six o'clock. Too early!

R: \_\_\_\_\_ (5. you/ wear) the Spiderman costume all day?

TM: Almost all day! But I (6. not wear) \_\_\_\_\_ it when I was playing Peter Parker, of course. Then I had normal clothes.

R: Was it scary to climb all those buildings?

TM: Well, I (7. not climb) \_\_\_\_\_ the really tall building. They use computer effects for that.

R: Have you ever seen the film at the cinema yet?

TM: Yes, I took my daughter to see it. It was cool because the cashier recognized me and we (8. not pay) \_\_\_\_\_!

III)-Complete the conversation between Nick and Mai about Vietnamese family traditions and customs with the sentences given (A-H). Practise the conversation with your partner.

- A. In the Vietnamese culture, strong members in a family have to help the weaker and less fortunate members of the family.
- B. I think the woman follows her career and she also supports the family.
- C. The man, or husband, serves as the head of the family. He takes care of money matters and is responsible for providing for the family.
- D. The same in Viet Nam, Nick. We try to get every achievement for our family.
- E. The husband and children share the housework, and they have a happy relationship in their home, I think.
- F. It is an extended family, including three generations living in the same house, typically including parents, children, grandparents, and sometimes, unmarried uncles and aunts.
- G. From a very young age, children are taught to take care of their parents when they become old.
- H. The woman is in charge of the home and raising the children.

Nick: Can you tell me about the typical kind of family in Viet Nam? A nuclear family or an extended one, Mai?

Mai: (1) \_\_\_\_\_

Nick: Yeah, I see. What is the role of the man or the father in the family?

Mai: (2) \_\_\_\_\_

Nick: How about the role of the woman?

Mai: (3) \_\_\_\_\_

Nick: I think the society in Vietnam has changed a lot. Is there any change in family life?

Mai: (4) \_\_\_\_\_

Nick: How to deal with the housework?

Mai: (5) \_\_\_\_\_

Nick: Yeah, the same situation in England now, Mai. Are there any family traditions in Viet Nam?

Mai: (6) \_\_\_\_\_

Nick: In other Asian countries, every member of family tries to do good actions so that their family will have good fame, and the parents feel happier.

Mai: (7) \_\_\_\_\_

Nick: Are there any traditions or customs for children in Viet Nam?

Mai: (8) \_\_\_\_\_

Nick: They are lucky, because in England many parents have to go to a nursing home when they get very old.

Mai: We think we owe our parents so much. One of the most well-known Vietnamese proverbs is, "The debt we owe our father is as great as Mount Thai Son; the debt we owe our mother is as inexhaustible as water flowing from its source."

#### **D. READING**

1)-Read the information about customs in some countries, and then give the answers to the questions.

#### **Different Customs**

Canada and the US: Don't arrive early if you're invited to someone's home.

Indonesia: Never point to anything with your foot.

Korea: Don't pass something to an older person or supervisor with only one hand.

Muslim countries: Don't eat with your left hand.

Samoa: Don't eat while you're walking in public.

Thailand: Never touch anyone except a child on the head.

1. In which country is foot considered a dirty part of the body?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. In which country should we pay attention to eating in public?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. In which country/ countries should we eat with the right hand?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. In which country/ countries shouldn't we arriving early at a party?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. In which country should you show high respect to older people or supervisor?  
\_\_\_\_\_

II)-Read the passage and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

In Japan, take off your shoes at the entrance to all homes, and most businesses and hotels. Usually a rack will be provided to store your shoes, and pair of guest slippers will be put nearby; many Japanese bring a pair of indoor slippers just in case, though.

Never wear slippers when you need to step onto a *tatami* mat (used in most Japanese homes and hotels), and be careful to remove the toilet slippers waiting for you in the bathroom. It is extremely bad form, for example, to reenter the main room of a house wearing slippers that have been running that have been running across a dirty area.

Unlike in western cultures, the Japanese bath is used after you have washes and rinsed, and feel like soaking in extra-hot water for 10, 20, 30 minutes. If you happen to be invited into a Japanese household, you will be given the honor of using the bath first, usually before dinner. Be extra careful so as not to dirty the water in any way because of its importance.

- |  | T                        | F                        |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Only take off your shoes when you enter a Japanese house. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |



2. Be careful with your slippers when you come back to the main room. ☐ ☐
3. You mustn't wear slippers stepping onto a *tatami* mat. ☐ ☐
4. The Japanese bath is also used for washing rinsing. ☐ ☐
5. The bath plays an important part in the Japanese life. ☐ ☐

III)-Read the passage about family traditions in Viet Nam, and do the tasks that follow.

Marriage and family are very important in Viet Nam. In the countryside, parents often arrange marriages; divorce remains uncommon, though is more frequent in cities. In traditional Vietnamese families, roles are rigid. The man of the house is primarily responsible for the family's economic well-being. Older children help to look after younger siblings. Discipline is viewed as a parental duty.

The woman of the house looks after her parents, husband and children. In rural areas, women also do much agriculture work. Vietnamese women live by the "four virtues": hard work, beauty, refined speech and excellent conduct.

The Vietnamese attach great importance to two traditional family obligations: to care for their parents in their old age and to worship them after death. In each Vietnamese family, there is at least one altar on which there are the pictures of their ancestors. Family members worship their ancestors because they think parents after death will go to live in another world and this altar is the place where the ancestor's souls live in. As a result, every day Vietnamese people lay flowers or sometimes fruits on the altar for the belief that those ancestors will enjoy them.

**Task 1: Match a word in column A with its definition in column B, writing the answer in each blank.**

Answer	A	B
_____	1. sibling (n)	A. the part of a person that is believed to continue exist after the body is dead.
_____	2. virtues (n)	B. to pray to or to show respect for someone like a god
_____	3. worship (v)	C. behavior which shows high moral standards
_____	4. altar (n)	D. the table used in ceremonies in a church, temple or

family		
_____	5. soul (n)	E. a brother or a sister

**Task 2: Read the passage again, and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).**

	T	F
6. In traditional Vietnamese families, the man has to support the family	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7. Children have to share housework with their parents.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8. Women in the countryside only looks after their families.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9. Children have to take care of their parents in their old age and to worship them after death.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10. Everyday Vietnamese people lay flowers or sometimes fruits on the altar because they believe those ancestors will eat the offerings.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

IV)-Read the passage and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

Culturally, in Thailand there are many practices and beliefs that are very different to those from other countries.

The Royal Family of Thailand is held in very high respect. Making impolite remarks about any of the royal family is against the law.

The traditional greeting is with two hands prayer-like palms together known as a “wai”. If a local gives a “wai” to you, to be polite, it is nice to “wai” back. A “wai”, however, is always appreciated.

Thai culture places certain spiritual importance to certain parts of the body. You should not point your feet at people, touch people with your feet, prop your feet up on seats or tables or step over people sitting on the ground. The head, in contrast, has a much higher importance. Avoid touching people on the head as this is considered very rude. You should also avoid sitting on pillows meant for head rests. In some rural areas, food is often served while seated on the ground. Stepping over food on the ground is another extremely rude gesture and will surely embarrass your Thai host.

Throughout all of Thailand, if you notice a pile of shoes at or near an entrance to a home, shop or guesthouse, you should remove your shoes before entry; it is considered rude not to do so.

- |   | T                        | F                        |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. All people in Thailand respect the Royal Family highly                                       | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2. A local person gives a “wai” to you, and you respond by saying “hello” if you are foreigner. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3. The feet maybe considered to be dirtiest part of the body.                                   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4. Never touch people on the head because the head is considered to rest on the pillow.         | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5. Remember to remove your shoes before entering a building.                                    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

V)-Read the passage about ancestor worship, and do the tasks that follow.

Ancestor worship is a religious practice based on belief that one’s ancestors possess supernatural powers, such as gods, angels, saints, or demons.

Ancestor worship in some cultures honors the deeds, memories, and sacrifice of the dead. Much of the worship includes visiting the ancestors at their graves, making offerings to them to provide for their welfare in the afterlife.

Spirit money (also called Hell Notes) is sometimes burned as an offering to ancestors as well for the afterlife. The living may regard the ancestors as “guardian angels” to them, perhaps in protecting them from serious accidents, or guiding their path in life.

Families burned incense every day on the domestic ancestral altar. In China, the family altar houses the family spirit tablets. On the outer surface of the spirit tablet is engraved the year of the death, his full name, and the name of the son who erects the tablet.

Anniversary rites take place on the death date of each major deceased member of the family every year. Sacrificial food is offered, and living members of the family participate in the ceremony in ritual based on age and generation.

**Task 1: Match a word in column A with its definition in column B, writing the answer in each blank.**

Answer	A	B
_____	1. practice	A. the life which some people believe begins after death
_____	2. deed	B. a substance that produces a sweet smell when burned, especially in religious ceremonies
_____	3. afterlife	C. an action
_____	4. incense	D. a ceremony, often for religious purposes
_____	5. rite	E. doing something many times

**Task 2: Read the passage again, and then answer the following questions.**

6. Why does ancestor worship become a religious practice?  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. What are the activities of the worship?  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Why do people burn spirit money for their dead ancestors?  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. What can we see on the spirit tablet?  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. When does anniversary rite for the major deceased member of the family take place?  
\_\_\_\_\_

## **E. WRITING**

**Make sentences about the xoe dance, using the words and phrases given. You can add some words and make changes.**

1. The xoe dance/ already/ considered/ a cultural and folklore activity/ Thai ethnic people/ Hoa Binh Province.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

2. Ten centuries ago/ *xoe*/ performed/ the occasion/ the establishment/ the hamlets and villages/ or during the festivals/ the Thai ethnic people.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Now/ it/ develop/ into 36 dances/ and/ become/ the symbol/ solidarity/ among the ethnic groups/ the northwest.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. The *xoe* dance/ performed/ the boys and girls / the hamlets.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. They/ hold hands/ form/ a circle/ and/ dance together.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Musical instruments/ the dance/ include/ lutes/ drums/ two-chord fiddles/ gongs/ and cymbals.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. For the Thai natives/ they/ not need/ learn the *xoe* dance/ because/ they/ dance automatically/ when they grow up.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Without/ *xoe* dance/ Thai boys and girls/ not become/ lovely couples.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

TEST (UNIT 4)

I)-Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. The wai is the traditional \_\_\_\_\_ of people in Thailand.  
A. goodbye      B. hello      C. greeting      D. greetings
2. When two Maori people meet, they \_\_\_\_\_ each other's noses.

- A. touch                      B. feel                      C. take                      D. kiss
3. Do you know the \_\_\_\_\_ way to welcome people in Tibet?  
A. custom                      B. customer                      C. customary                      D. tradition
4. The xoe dance is a spritual \_\_\_\_\_ of Thai ethnic people.  
A. customs                      B. tradition                      C. habit                      D. dance
5. In Vietnam you shouldn't use only the first name to \_\_\_\_\_ people older than you.  
A. speak                      B. talk                      C. say                      D. address
6. We are going to prepare \_\_\_\_\_ sticky rice served with grilled chicken for the celebration.  
A. five colours                      B. five-colours                      C. five-colour                      D. five-coloured
7. A tradition is something special that is \_\_\_\_\_ through the generations.  
A. passed                      B. passed to                      C. passed down                      D. passed out
8. According to the \_\_\_\_\_ in England, we have to use a knife and fork at dinner.  
A. table ways                      B. table                      C. behaviours                      D. differences  
manners
9. We have to \_\_\_\_\_ our shoes when we go inside a pagoda.  
A. take off                      B. give off                      C. turn off                      D. put on
10. In Australia, you shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ on a person's accent.  
A. comment                      B. criticize                      C. hate                      D. dislike

II)-Fill in each blank of the passage with the correct word from the box.

<i>activities</i>	<i>presentation</i>	<i>water-throwing</i>	<i>tradition</i>	<i>celebrations</i>
<i>festival</i>	<i>enjoyment</i>	<i>heat</i>	<i>wishes</i>	<i>fortune</i>

### Thai New Year (Songkran Festival)

The traditional Thai New Year is celebrated in April each year. Thailand adopted this (11)\_\_\_\_\_ with the belief that the sun re-entered Aries and finished its orbit round the earth on April 13. In Thailand, this (12)\_\_\_\_\_ is celebrated for three days from April 13 to April 15. Before the (13)\_\_\_\_\_, people will clean

their houses in the hope of casting away of any bad luck of the old year, so that good (14)\_\_\_\_\_ will enter their new lives instead. Food and sweets will be prepared in advance for merit making and for treating guests.

The Songkran celebrations will begin with food (15)\_\_\_\_\_ to the monks who will walk along the street in the early morning to receive food and other offerings. One of the most popular (16)\_\_\_\_\_ for young people is to convey their best (17)\_\_\_\_\_ to their elders by pouring water onto them or their palms. After this, it is time for children and young people to have full (18)\_\_\_\_\_ with water-throwing, dancing and folk games.

Do not expect to escape the (19)\_\_\_\_\_ activities, these take place on every street in Thailand. They can be a welcome break to the (20)\_\_\_\_\_ of the dry season, but if you wish to stay dry it is best to stay indoors!

III)-Give advice with “*should*” or “*shouldn’t*”, using the words given in brackets.

*Example:* You look very pale and terrible. (see a doctor)

*You should see a doctor*

21. You work until 11 every night (not work so hard)  
\_\_\_\_\_
22. It’s Mai’s birthday on Saturday. I think we should do something. (buy her a nice birthday present)  
\_\_\_\_\_
23. The car did not start this morning. (take it to the garage)  
\_\_\_\_\_
24. Our train leaves at 6 o’clock tomorrow morning. (go to bed early tonight)  
\_\_\_\_\_
25. He always gives you the wrong advice. (not listen to him)  
\_\_\_\_\_
26. Everything will be all right. (not worry so much)  
\_\_\_\_\_
27. He doesn’t like this job because it’s too boring. (look for another one)  
\_\_\_\_\_
28. It’s too late to play music so loudly, we’ll wake up the neighbours. (turn it off)  
\_\_\_\_\_

29. Your hair is so long. (have a haircut)

30. He doesn't understand the lesson. (meet the teacher after class)

IV)-Complete the sentence with a form of "have to" and "should". Make the verbs negative if necessary.

31. Your hair's too long. I think you \_\_\_\_\_ get it cut.

32. Your clothes are dirty. You \_\_\_\_\_ wash them.

33. I'm going to bed. I \_\_\_\_\_ get up early tomorrow.

34. I'd like to meet your best friend. You \_\_\_\_\_ invite him/ her round.

35. I \_\_\_\_\_ tell my parents where I am, then they don't worry.

36. You \_\_\_\_\_ come with me if you don't want to. I'll go on my own.

37. If you need some helps with your homework, you \_\_\_\_\_ go to the library.

38. If you have a ticket, you \_\_\_\_\_ queue. You can go straight in.

39. You \_\_\_\_\_ tell lies. It's wrong.

40. Nick works too much. I think he \_\_\_\_\_ take it easy.

V)-Complete Nick's e-mail to a friend about his summer holiday with "had to" or "didn't have to" and the words given in the box.

stay	walk	go back	eat	buy	pay
------	------	---------	-----	-----	-----

Hi, Johnny!

I got back home this morning. What a crazy holiday! First, my sister forgot her passport so we (41)\_\_\_\_\_ for it. Then we went to the wrong airport terminal so we (42)\_\_\_\_\_ to the right one. After that the airline cancelled our flight so we (43)\_\_\_\_\_ in an airport hotel for the night but luckily we (44)\_\_\_\_\_ for it. Finally, we arrived. There was octopus for dinner every last day, my brother Toby dropped his phone in the sea and he (46)\_\_\_\_\_ a new one. He was not pleased!

Write soon.

Nick.

VI)-Complete the conversation between Nick and Mai about Vietnamese table manners with the sentences given (A-H). Practise your conversation with your partner.

A. Chopsticks should be place on the table or a chopstick holder after a few mouthfuls or when breaking to drink or speak.



- B. Yes, and remember to cover your mouth when using a toothpick.
- C. You should rest your chopsticks on top of your rice bowl.
- D. You shouldn't bring handkerchiefs, anything black, or yellow flowers.
- E. They are chopsticks and flat spoon.
- F. You should bring a small gift, such as fruits, sweets, flowers...
- G. Yeah, you should try to finish everything on your plate.
- H. No. You should wait to be shown where to sit, and the oldest person should sit first.

Nick: What should I do first if I am invited to a Vietnamese home for dinner, Mai?

Mai: (47) \_\_\_\_\_

Nick: Which kinds of gift shouldn't I bring?

Mai: (48) \_\_\_\_\_

Nick: Can I sit at the dining table as I would like to?

Mai: (49) \_\_\_\_\_

Nick: What are the most common utensils for a meal in Viet Nam?

Mai: (50) \_\_\_\_\_

Nick: Where should I place my chopsticks when breaking to drink or speak?

Mai: (51) \_\_\_\_\_

Nick: Is there anything else that I have to pay attention to during the meal?

Mai: (52) \_\_\_\_\_

Nick: What should I do when I finish dinner?

Mai: (53) \_\_\_\_\_

Nick: Do Vietnamese people often use toothpicks after finishing a meal?

Mai: (54) \_\_\_\_\_

Nick: Thank you so much, Mai.

Mai: You're welcome. I hope you'll enjoy having a meal with a Vietnamese household.

VII)-Read the passage about introducing Vietnamese customs to foreigners, and then choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank in the following passage.

The Vietnamese are now to be polite, hospitable and sensitive. They have a casual and friendly (55)\_\_\_\_\_. They regard friendship as being very important throughout one's life. They are always open to visit from friends. Drop-in visits are welcome. The Vietnamese are very (56)\_\_\_\_\_ to their family.

When they (57)\_\_\_\_\_ you a gift, the Vietnamese will usually speak lightly about it. Even though it is an expensive gift, they may pretend it is of no great monetary value.

(58)\_\_\_\_\_ 4,000 years of civilization, the Vietnamese are proud people who like to recite to a myth that they are descendants of an angel and a dragon.

If you happen to be in their homes at meal time, the Vietnamese will probably (59)\_\_\_\_\_ you to sit down and share whatever food is (60)\_\_\_\_\_. Let them know that you enjoy their food is one way to successfully (61)\_\_\_\_\_ a better relationship with them.

When they invite you to their homes for a meal, celebration, or special occasion, some (62)\_\_\_\_\_ - usually food, fruits, chocolate or liquors – should be offered to the host's family.

- |     |              |                |                |                 |
|-----|--------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 55. | A. manner    | B. feature     | C. culture     | D. tradition    |
| 56. | A. closed    | B. closing     | C. close       | D. being closed |
| 57. | A. sell      | B. carry       | C. send        | D. offer        |
| 58. | A. Of        | B. With        | C. At          | D. In           |
| 59. | A. take      | B. require     | C. speak       | D. invite       |
| 60. | A. available | B. present     | C. good        | D. delicious    |
| 61. | A. setting   | B. building    | C. taking      | D. being        |
| 62. | A. offers    | B. invitations | C. gifts       | D. situations   |
| 60. | A. have      | B. share       | C. divide      | D. cut          |
| 61. | A. mountain  | B. mount       | C. mountainous | D. hill         |
| 62. | A. growing   | B. harvesting  | C. putting     | D. raising      |
| 63. | A. watch     | B. see         | C. stare       | D. look         |

64. A. cloth                      B. material                      C. costume                      D. costumes  
65. A. out                      B. around                      C. at                      D. above  
66. A. diverse                      B. diversity                      C. variety                      D. range  
67. A. most                      B. the most                      C. more                      D. the more  
68. A. together                      B. as well                      C. along                      D. along with  
69. A. two strings                      B. two-string                      C. two string                      D. second-string

VIII)-Read the passage about different customs for greetings around the world, and do the tasks that follow.

### **Greeting Customs Around the World**

#### **USA**

It is normal for men to shake hands when they meet, but it is quite unusual for men to kiss when they greet each other. Greetings are casual – a handshake, a smile and a ‘hello’ will do just fine.

#### **UK**

The British often simply say ‘hello’ when they meet friends. They usually shake hands only when they meet for the first time. Social kissing is common in an informal situation between men and women and also between women who know each other very well.

#### **France**

The French, including children, shake hands with their friends and often kiss them on both cheeks, both upon meeting and leaving.

#### **Arab countries**

In Arab countries, close male friends or colleagues hug and kiss both cheeks. They shake hands with their right hand only, for longer but less firmly than in the West. Contact between the opposite genders in public is considered obscene. Do not offer to shake hands with the opposite sex.

#### **Hungary**

Hungarians like to use the friendly greeting form of kissing each other on the cheeks. The most common way is to kiss from your right to your left. When men meet for the first time, the casual greeting is a firm handshake.

## Belgium

People kiss on one cheek when they meet, regardless of the gender or how well they know.

## Chinese

Chinese people tend to be more conservative. When meeting someone for the first time, they would usually nod their heads and smile, or shake hands if in a formal situation.

## Russia

The typical greeting is a very firm handshake while maintaining direct eye contact. When men shake hands with women, the handshake is not firm. It is considered gallant to kiss women three times while alternating cheeks, and even to kiss hands.

**Task 1: Match a word in column A with its definition in column B, writing the answer in each blank.**

Answer	A	B
_____	63. hug	A. not liking change, traditional
_____	64. obscene	B. happening one after the other
_____	65. conservative	C. looking directly at each other
_____	66. eye contact	D. to put your arms around somebody to show that you love or like him/her
_____	67. alternating	E. shocking and annoying

**Task 2: Read the passage again, and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).**

	T	F
68. People in China and Arab countries seem to be more careful when greeting people for the first time or the opposite sex	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
69. Shaking hands is the most popular way of greeting in Britain.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
70. Kissing is considered a popular way of greeting in France,	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Hungary, and Belgium.

71. In Russia, you should shake hands with your friend but never look into his/ her eyes. ☐ ☐
72. In Hungary, the most common greeting way is kissing and you should pay attention to the order. ☐ ☐

IX)-Make sentences about folk dances of the Xa Pho ethnic group in Sa Pa, using the words and phrases given. You can add some words and make changes.

73. The Xa Pho ethnic group/ a population/ over 1,000 people/ mainly/ the district/ Sa Pa.

---

---

---

74. Different folk dances/ the Xa Pho/ performed/ by groups of five to ten people/ straight or curved lines.

---

---

75. In the dance movements/ the left hand/ use/ musical instrument/ while/ the right hand/ hold/ costumes following the beat.

---

---

76. Girls/ often wear/ traditional skirt and shirt/ indigo fabric.

---

---

77. They/ embroider and decorate/ clothes/ elaborately/ beautifully.

---

---

78. Main musical instrument/ Ma Nhi.

---

---

79. Women/ dance and beat/ rhythm/ the same time.

---

---

80. Men and women/ separate dances/ and/ seldom/ dance together.

---

---

# UNIT 5: FESTIVALS IN VIET NAM

## A. PHONETICS

**I)-Complete the table with appropriate nouns, and then put the nouns in the tablet in the correct column your their stress pattern.**

Verbs	Nouns	Verbs	Nouns
1. concentrate		16. organize	
2. compose		17. compare	
3. consider		18. attend	
4. construct		19. recognize	
5. coordinate		20. animate	
6. depress		21. consume	
7. donate		22. explode	
8. erect		23. discuss	
9. found		24. celebrate	
10. locate		25. educate	
11. apply		26. commemorate	
12. generate		27. invade	
13. oblige		28. preserve	
14. reflect		29. recommend	
15. converse		30. present	

Stress on 2 <sup>nd</sup> syllable	Stress on 3 <sup>rd</sup> syllable	Stress on 4 <sup>th</sup> syllable


II)-Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

1. A. concentration    B. composition    C. consideration    D. conversation
2. A. coordination    B. depression    C. donation    D. erection
3. A. foundation    B. location    C. organization    D. performance
4. A. affection    B. recognition    C. contribution    D. animation
5. A. consumption    B. explosion    C. technician    D. mathematician
6. A. magician    B. historian    C. musician    D. vegetarian
7. A. librarian    B. physician    C. Brazilian    D. Indonesian
8. A. civilian    B. grammarian    C. politician    D. Shakespearian

## B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I)-Fill in each blank with one suitable subordinate from the box

<i>and</i>	<i>but</i>	<i>so</i>	<i>when</i>
<i>while</i>	<i>because</i>	<i>although</i>	<i>moreover</i>

### International Kite Festival in Vung Tau

Vung Tau has become a familiar tourist destination to make people (1)\_\_\_\_\_ it has its own beautiful beaches and mountains. (2)\_\_\_\_\_, Vung Tau even has more to

offer. International Kite Festival in Vung Tau, first held in 2009, is the biggest kite festival in Vietnam. (3)\_\_\_\_\_ the festival is still new, it has attracted kite artisans all around the world such as France, Australia, the UK, US, Cambodia, Malaysia, the Philippines, etc.

The festival may take place in various tourist sites, (4)\_\_\_\_\_ the events are in the same order. (5)\_\_\_\_\_ you come to Vung Tau during the first days of summer, you can enjoy the colourful sky with kites from skillful hands of artisans around the world. (6)\_\_\_\_\_ kites from other countries are in different styles, Viet Nam showed up kites of Hue royal style in shape of a phoenix or a dragon. In 2009, the clubs from Hue had tradition (7)\_\_\_\_\_ most diversified kites, (8)\_\_\_\_\_ they were awarded special prizes.

II)-Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. The extended family arranged marriage, \_\_\_\_\_ individuals were consulted on the choice of their mate.  
A. so                      B. and                      C. yet                      D. otherwise
2. \_\_\_\_\_ the first footer has a good reputation and success, the family believes that they will receive luck and good fortune throughout the year.  
A. If                      B. When                      C. Because                      D. Moreover
3. Parents usually buy new clothes and shoes for their children a month before the New Year; \_\_\_\_\_, children cannot wear their clothes until the first day of the New Year and onward.  
A. moreover              B. although              C. otherwise              D. however
4. The left hand is customarily used for cleaning, \_\_\_\_\_ Indian people never eat with their left hands.  
A. so                      B. but                      C. however                      D. therefore
5. The yellow apricot blossoms are often see in Southern Vietnam, \_\_\_\_\_, the pink peach blossoms are known as the primary flower in every home in the North.  
A. moreover              B. however                      C. therefore                      D. yet
6. \_\_\_\_\_ children have performed a certain greeting before receiving lucky money, adults return good advice, encouraging children to keep up with the schoolwork, and obeying their parents.



A. Although      B. If      C. When      D. However

7. \_\_\_\_\_ the Vietnamese believe in fate in marriage, they also think that marriage arrangement plays some role in activating a positive or negative fate.

A. Even though      B. However      C. Therefore      D. Yet

8. \_\_\_\_\_ the Chinese greet other people, they have the custom of bowing, folding their hands on chest.

A. Because      B. Although      C. When      D. However

III)-Fill in the blanks with the correct verbs from the box. Maybe some questions can have more than one answer.

<i>honour</i>	<i>perform</i>	<i>commemorate</i>	<i>celebrate</i>
<i>worship</i>	<i>symbolizes</i>	<i>pray</i>	<i>hold</i>

1. On New Year's Eve, in front up the altar, people \_\_\_\_\_ for health and luck in the New Year.
2. Mid-Autumn Festival is held on 15<sup>th</sup> day of the eight lunar month to \_\_\_\_\_ the biggest full moon in the year.
3. To express their gratitude, villagers from Le Mat village built a temple to \_\_\_\_\_ the man who saved the princess and made their region wealthy as well as adding catching snakes to the career.
4. To \_\_\_\_\_ the event when An Duong Vuong started moving into the citadel, residents of 12 hamlets belonging to Co Loa held Co Loa Citadel Festival within a 10-day period.
5. "Che Troi Nuoc, a special dessert consisting of a sweet soup with round balls made from rice and sugar sauce, \_\_\_\_\_ reunion.
6. Ba Na villagers \_\_\_\_\_ the Village Land Praying Ceremony in preparation for the new crop or before moving to new land.
7. During the Trung Sisters Temple Festival, villagers \_\_\_\_\_ folk games and artistic events, such as dragon and lion dancing, *cheo* singing, wrestling competition, swinging, etc.
8. Taking place on the third lunar month in Truong Yen Commune, Ninh Binh Province, Hoa Lu Festival is celebrated to \_\_\_\_\_ the Kings Dinh Tien Hoang and Le Dai Hanh.

IV)-Match the festivals in column A with their description in column B, writing the answer in each blank.

Answer	A	B
_____	1. Saint Giong Festival	A. This is held in Meo Vac District, Ha Giang on April 24 to 26. It is a popular meeting place for ethnic groups, and particularly for those people in love. Festival goers will have the chance to enjoy horse fighting , cultural performance and folk games, including drum dancing of the Giay ethnic group.
_____	2. Co Loa Citadel Festival	B. This festival is the perfect start for religious journey towards the imperial capital Hoa Lu, Ninh Binh province. It offers incense to Buddha, commemorates Saint Nguyen Minh Khong, and God Cao Son.
_____	3. Bai Dinh Pagoda Festival	C. This festival is held in Phu Dong Temple where Saint Giong was born and Soc Temple where he ascended to heaven. It commemorates Saint Giong, hoping for abundant harvests and happy lives.
_____	4. Khau Vai Love Market Festival	D. This festival is celebrated to thank the Moon God for bringing good crops, abundant fish in the river and maintain the health of all villagers. The most colourful event of this festivals is the flying of paper lanterns and placing banana tree ferries attached with lights in the river.
_____	5. Oc Om Boc Festival	E. This is a festival to commemorate the event when An Duong Vuong started moving into the citadel. Residents of 12 hamlets belonging to Co Loa as well as 7 other communes around the region held Co Loa Citadel Festival within 10-day period – from the 6 <sup>th</sup> to 16 <sup>th</sup> day of the first Lunar month.

### C. SPEAKING

I)-Rearrange the sentences in order to make a meaningful conversation, writing the number (1-10) in each blank. The first (0) has been done for you.

1 Mai: Hi, everyone. The first term is coming to an end, and we have some days off. Let's go somewhere.

\_\_\_\_ A. Mai: It takes only one and half hours to travel there by coach. It is located 60 kilometers southwest from Ha Noi.

\_\_\_\_ B. Phong: We should take some snacks, and some bottles of mineral water.

\_\_\_\_ C. Mai: I think that's enough for a short trip to Huong Pagoda, and we'll present the plan in front of the class next Monday.

\_\_\_\_ D. Mai: Yes, I agree with you, Nick. It's a good opportunity for us to go to Huong Pagoda Festival.

\_\_\_\_ E. Nick: And what about umbrella and trainers? We have to climb the hills, and the weather is not always fine, maybe some rain.

\_\_\_\_ F. Phong: It sounds very interesting, Mai. Is it a long way from here to Huong Pagoda?

\_\_\_\_ G. Mai: Besides the camera, I think we need to bring some food and drink.

\_\_\_\_ H. Nick: That's a good idea, Mai. How about going to a festival? I have heard that you have many festivals in January. Right?

\_\_\_\_ I. Phong: Sounds great. It doesn't take us so long to get here. The sights and landscapes are very beautiful.

\_\_\_\_ J. Nick: I'll bring along a digital camera. I hope we can take many nice pics.

II)-Match the questions in column A with the suitable answers in column B. In pairs, make a conversation about this festival, and practise it.

Answer	A	B
_____	1. What is the festival in these photos?	A. During the festival, there are variety of cultural performances taking place such as Hue Poetry Festival, Massive Street Arts Performances, the Dialogue of drums and percussion instruments, Art Exhibitions, the Week of Vietnam's historical films.
_____	2. How often is it held?	B. Hue Festival has become a space of cultural exchanges between peoples all over the world.

_____	3. When is the festival held? And how long is it?	C. Visitors can come and explore some traditional values of Vietnam at Gastronomy Quarters, Traditional Kite Flying Festival or watch “Ao dai” Grand show, “Oriental Night” Show, and sporting activities like boat race, human chess, etc.
_____	4. What is Hue Festival for?	D. It lasts one week, usually in April, May or June.
_____	5. What performances can we see during the festival?	E. It is Hue Festival.
_____	6. What are the cultural and traditional events at Hue Festival?	F. Every two years.

#### D. READING

1)-Read the passage about the Pig Slaughter Festival and do the tasks that follow.

##### **Viet Nam Pig Slaughter Festival**

The traditional Pig Slaughter Festival is held on the 6<sup>th</sup> day of the Lunar New Year in Nem Thuong Village, in Bac Ninh Province. This festival is held to commemorate a general in the Ly Dynasty – Doan Thuong, who reclaimed this land. According to legend, the general brought his troops to this land and slaughtered with male pigs to feed his soldiers. The Pig Slaughter Festival originated from this. Pig blood in the festival is believed to symbolize prosperity, vitality and good harvest. However, the festival is known as the most brutal in the country, and many people have asked the government to stop the festival. “Animal Asia” – an international organization to protect animal rights – is calling on the Vietnamese authorities to end the Nem Thuong Pig Slaughter Festival.

**Task 1: Match a word in column A with its definition in column B, writing the answer in each blank.**

Answer	A	B
_____	1. slaughter (n)	A. the state of being full of energy
_____	2. reclaim (v)	B. soldiers in a large group
_____	3. troops (n)	C. to make land suitable for use
_____	4. symbolize (v)	D. the killing of animals for meat
_____	5. vitality (n)	E. to be a symbol of something

**Task 2: Read the passage again, and then answer the following questions.**

6. Where and when is the Pig Slaughter Festival held?  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. What is the purpose of this festival?  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. What legend did the festival originate from?  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. What is pig blood in the festival believed to symbolize?  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. Why is the festival asked to stop by many people?  
\_\_\_\_\_

II)-Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

### **Kate Festival**

Kate Festival is (1)\_\_\_\_\_ by the Cham people for 3 days at the beginning of October. This event is held in a large space in the three Champa Towers (Po Nagar, Po Klong Garai and Po Rome). The main purpose of the festival is to (2)\_\_\_\_\_ their heroes like to Po Klong Garai and Po Rome. (3)\_\_\_\_\_, the festival is a chance for the local people to relax, meet and wish one another (4)\_\_\_\_\_ in the future.

This is one of the biggest and most important events of the Cham people in Vietnam. (5)\_\_\_\_\_, it is a good opportunity for the visitors to explore the

(6)\_\_\_\_\_ in the Cham culture, from architecture to costumes, instruments and traditional songs that are used to praise their kings in the past. The Kate festival in each tower starts at the same time on the same day, and the day after, villages and family begin to hold their own rites. During the rite, the people (7)\_\_\_\_\_ their ancestors and gods with the help of a shaman, and then pray (8)\_\_\_\_\_ health and prosperity. The actual festivals (9)\_\_\_\_\_ after the rites. It is a combination of traditional music and dance, including some activities (10)\_\_\_\_\_ performances of Ginang Drum and Saranai Flute or the traditional dance of Cham girls.

- |     |               |                 |              |                   |
|-----|---------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------------|
| 1.  | A. organize   | B. organized    | C. hold      | D. being held     |
| 2.  | A. commemorat | B. see          | C. watch     | D. love           |
|     | e             |                 |              |                   |
| 3.  | A. However    | B. Nevertheless | C. Therefore | D. Moreover       |
| 4.  | A. lucky      | B. happy        | C. fortune   | D. dream          |
| 5.  | A. However    | B. Therefore    | C. Because   | D. Although       |
| 6.  | A. beautiful  | B. beautifully  | C. charm     | D. charming       |
| 7.  | A. call       | B. ask          | C. shout     | D. speak          |
| 8.  | A. to         | B. about        | C. of        | D. for            |
| 9.  | A. take place | B. take places  | C. take part | D. take the place |
| 10. | A. such       | B. so           | C. like      | D. like as        |

III)-Read the passage about Chol Chnam Thmay Festival, and do the tasks that follow.

### **Chol Chnam Thmay Festival**

This holiday is the New Year festival in ancient calendar of Khmer people. Held in mid-April, the festival occurs in 3 days (4 days for the leap year). People prepare new clothe, food and drinks for whole festival days. They also repair, clean and decorate their house. Everyone is excited to care for holiday.

At night of New Year's Eve, every family prepares a lavish meal, burns incense and candles to welcome the new god, farewell the old god. On the altar, they present 5 flower branches, 5 candles, 5 incenses, 5 cereal seeds and fruit crops. They pray for health and luck in the New Year.

On the first New Year – Chol Chnam Thmay, major activities are bathing, dressing nice, bringing sacrifice gifts to the temple in good time which has been selected.

On Wonbof day – the second day, they make rice offerings and cover the sand mountain. People cook rice and bring it to the temple in the morning and the afternoon.

On Lom Sak day – the third day, they do Buddha bathing and monk-bathing ceremony. In the morning, people bring breakfast to monks and listen to the sermon. At noon, they burn the lamps, offer sacrifice gifts and bring fragrant water to bathe Buddha statues. After the ceremony at the temple, the monks go to the grave to pray for the souls of those who died.

**Task 1: Match a word in column A with its definition in column B, writing the answer in each blank.**

Answer	A	B
_____	1. lavish (adj)	A. to speak to a god to give thanks or to ask for something.
_____	2. farewell (v)	B. a speech on a religious matter
_____	3. monk (n)	C. large in amount or number
_____	4. sermon (n)	D. having a pleasant smell
_____	5. fragrant (adj)	E. say goodbye
_____	6. pray (v)	F. a man who has decided to live a religious life in a community

**Task 2: Read the passage again, and then answer the following questions.**

7. What is the festival?  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. When is it held? And how long does it last?  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. What do people prepare to celebrate the festival?  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. How do Khmer people prepare the altar at night of New Year's Eve?  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. What do people do on the first New Year Day?  
\_\_\_\_\_

12. When do people cook rice and bring it to the temple?  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. When do they do Buddha bathing and monk-bathing ceremony?  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. What do the monks do after doing Buddha bathing and monk-bathing ceremony?  
\_\_\_\_\_

## E. WRITING

I)-Connect each pair of sentences, using the conjunction or conjunctive adverbs given in brackets.

1. On New Year's Eve, the Vietnamese put fruits on the altar. They also arrange watermelon and traditional cakes such as *chung* cakes. **(and)**  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Many people go to pagodas or churches on New Year's Day to pray for the coming year. Many others remain in their home in front of the altar to welcome the ancestors through prayer. **(while)**  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. People from Western countries do not follow ancestor worship. Ancestor worship is considered a type of religious practices in some Asian countries. **(although)**  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. *Xoan* singing is still in the memory of folk artists in Phu Tho Province. They always try their best to hand down offspring the old style of singing in the activities of the clubs. **(because)**  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_



II)-Make sentences about the Giong Festival, using the words and phrases given. You can add some words and make changes.

1. The Giong Festival/ held/ the 6<sup>th</sup>/ the 12<sup>th</sup>/ the 4<sup>th</sup> lunar month/ several venues around Ha Noi.

---

---

2. The festival/ commemorate/ Saint Giong/ who/ defeat/ the An.

---

---

3. It/ also/ an opportunity/ hope for abundant harvest/ happy lives/ and express patriotism.

---

---

4. During/ festival/ villagers/ the statue bathing/ processions of bamboo flowers/ Soc Temple.

---

---

5. The festival/ provide/ many entertaining activities/ including/ folk games/ traditional singing performances.

---

---

6. The festival/ recognized/ UNESCO/ as an intangible heritage/ mankind.

---

---

TEST (UNIT 5)

I)-Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- |    |                 |                   |                       |                  |
|----|-----------------|-------------------|-----------------------|------------------|
| 1. | A. malnutrition | B. prohibition    | C. recommenda<br>tion | D. superstitious |
| 2. | A. application  | B. congratulation | C. recreation         | D. education     |
| 3. | A. exhaustion   | B. maintenance    | C. opinion            | D. pollution     |
| 4. | A. reduction    | B. competition    | C. objection          | D. appearance    |

5. A. comparison      B. organization      C. communicati      D. socialization  
on

II)-Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

6. \_\_\_\_\_ different regions and religious have a variety in marital arrangements, the arranged is a traditional feature of every community.  
A. Because      B. Although      C. While      D. When
7. The Vietnamese are influenced by Buddhist theology and Confucian philosophy, \_\_\_\_\_ they believe in fate in marriage.  
A. and      B. but      C. so      D. yet
8. Always take your shoes off before you enter a temple in India, \_\_\_\_\_ you will be considered impolite.  
A. otherwise      B. therefore      C. however      D. moreover
9. "Giao Thua" is the most sacred time of the year; \_\_\_\_\_, the first houseguest to offer the first greeting is very important.  
A. moreover      B. therefore      C. however      D. moreover
10. The five-fruit tray on the altar symbolizes the gratitude of the Vietnamese to their ancestors; \_\_\_\_\_, it demonstrates their hope for a life of plenty.  
A. and      B. moreover      C. therefore      D. however
11. The Hung King Temple Festival \_\_\_\_\_ from the 8<sup>th</sup> to the 11<sup>th</sup> day of the third lunar month in Phu Tho.  
A. takes      B. takes part      C. takes place      D. takes turn
12. During the Buddhist Festival, visitors join the procession and make offerings to \_\_\_\_\_ Buddha at the pagoda.  
A. think about      B. consider      C. worship      D. believe
13. I think the Kate Festival is a really joyful festival which \_\_\_\_\_ many activities.  
A. contains      B. cutting      C. feature      D. includes in
14. In Vietnam, the \_\_\_\_\_ we mostly use is chopsticks.  
A. cut      B. cutting      C. cutlery      D. cutlet
15. You shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ your promise to the children.  
A. break      B. cut      C. keep      D. save

III)-Complete each blank in the following passage about *Vu Lan* Festival with the correct linking word from the box. Some words maybe used more than once. (There may be more than one possibility).

<i>and</i>	<i>because</i>	<i>when</i>	<i>then</i>
<i>moreover</i>	<i>therefore</i>	<i>heat</i>	<i>first</i>

### ***Vu Lan* Festival**

*Vu Lan* Festival takes place on 15<sup>th</sup> day of the seventh lunar month. It is also called “Xa toi vong nhan” festival (16)\_\_\_\_\_ this is the day for the death’s souls. Many people believe that on that day, (17)\_\_\_\_\_ the gate of the hell opens, souls of the dead can come back to their home (18)\_\_\_\_\_ gather with their family. (19)\_\_\_\_\_, Vietnamese people consider that it is also the occasion for family gatherings as well as expressing love (20)\_\_\_\_\_ gratitude to ancestors and parents. (21)\_\_\_\_\_, *Vu Lan* Festival is known as Mother’s Day in Vietnam.

(22)\_\_\_\_\_, in the morning of that day, a lavish tray with various delicious dishes set on the altar, and the householder will burn incense and invite ancestor to come back home and celebrate the festival with family. (23)\_\_\_\_\_ at night the Vietnamese hold a ceremony of releasing lighted lanterns on the river, (24)\_\_\_\_\_ Vietnamese people believe by doing that, their wishes for parents will come true.

Pagodas are crowded during the festival say (25)\_\_\_\_\_ Buddhist gather for the monk’s lecture. Each Buddhist has a flower (usually rose) in front of their chest: red flower (26)\_\_\_\_\_ their parents are living and white flower (27)\_\_\_\_\_ their parents are dead.

IV)-Complete the conversation about two options of holidays with the sentences given (A-H). Practise the conversation with your partner.

- A. and some bottles of mineral water
- B. good hotels near the beach
- C. a chance to watch the art kite flying festival
- D. but I think
- E. go and enjoy
- F. don’t forget to bring our swim costumes
- G. I prefer to enjoy the sea and the blue sky

H. watch other sports performances on the beach

Mai: Our class is going to hold a three-day trip. Shall we go to Da Lat Flower Festival or Nha Trang Carnival?

Nick: (28)\_\_\_\_\_, so I choose Nha Trang Carnival.

Phong: I would like to go to Da Lat to see colourful flowers – flowers bloom everywhere from indoors to outside lane, across the road and the city, from the small shop to the beautiful large park.

Mai: My younger sister and I likes flowers so much, (29)\_\_\_\_\_ Nha Trang Carnival is much more exciting with a lot of cultural and recreational events.

Nick: I want to swim and (30)\_\_\_\_\_. It sounds great!

Phong: Are there any other activities in Nha Trang?

Mai: I know your hobby is flying a kite, so in Nha Trang you have (31)\_\_\_\_\_

---

Phong: Really! Awesome. Let's (32)\_\_\_\_\_ Nha Trang Carnival this year. Right?

Nick: Yeah. I think we should take some canned food (33)\_\_\_\_\_.

Phong: And (34)\_\_\_\_\_. Remember to bring the sun lotion for your younger sister and you, Mai.

Mai: Thanks, Phong. We should book our trip in advance, so we can stay at (35)\_\_\_\_\_.

Phong: We'll talk about this to our class in the next meeting.

Nick: That's right! Maybe our classmates have more interesting ideas.

Mai: And our teacher will tell our parents about the plans for the trip to Nha Trang.

V)-Choose the words or phrases among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

### **Khau Vai Love Market Festival – Beauty of Love**

Khau Vai Commune, located in Meo Vac District, is (36)\_\_\_\_\_ to ethnic minority group of Giay, Nung and Muong. The love market festival is held (37)\_\_\_\_\_ Lunar March 26<sup>th</sup> and 27<sup>th</sup> with the participation of a large number

---

of local people. The festival features food and drink culture, song (38)\_\_\_\_\_ and folk games. Ethnic (39)\_\_\_\_\_, jewellery, ethnic musical instruments, culture and art publications are (40)\_\_\_\_\_ at the market, reflecting activities of the local people.

The story concerns two temples in the area of Khau Vai Market. Once upon a time, there was a boy and a girl born from two different places of the Dong Van Plateau. Since forbidden to get married (41)\_\_\_\_\_ the two families, they decided (42)\_\_\_\_\_ home to come and settle down together in Khau Vai, a prosperous land with green plants.

Since then, over every Lunar March 27<sup>th</sup>, Khau Vai has attracted couples of different ages, including those who seek (43)\_\_\_\_\_ for the first time. (44)\_\_\_\_\_, most of them are those who love each other very much but cannot marry (45)\_\_\_\_\_ different reasons.

- |                     |               |               |                 |
|---------------------|---------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 36. A. family       | B. home       | C. house      | D. hometown     |
| 37. A. in           | B. at         | C. on         | D. during       |
| 38. A. performances | B. rituals    | C. ceremonies | D. celebrations |
| 39. A. cloth        | B. materials  | C. costume    | D. costumes     |
| 40. A. in show      | B. on display | C. in display | D. on stage     |
| 41. A. between      | B. on         | C. by         | D. because of   |
| 42. A. leave        | B. to leave   | C. leaving    | D. left         |
| 43. A. partners     | B. couples    | C. lovers     | D. wives        |
| 44. A. Otherwise    | B. Therefore  | C. Moreover   | D. However      |
| 45. A. of           | B. for        | C. at         | D. from         |

VI)-Read the articles about the two famous festivals in Viet Nam, and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

### **Nha Trang Sea Festival**

Nha Trang Sea Festival takes place every two years for a week in around June in Nha Trang City, Khanh Hoa Province. This is a colorful and dynamic sea festival which honors natural beauty of Nha Trang – the charming city overlooking the sea. The first Nha Trang Sea Festival was held in 2003 when Nha Trang Beach was proclaimed as a member of the Most Beautiful Bays in the World Club. Coming to Nha Trang at the time

of festival, visitors will be able to take part in various cultural and recreational events. First of all is an abundant opening ceremony by Vietnamese and international art groups. Besides, many interesting activities also take place during the festival like seafood competition, wine festival, beach volleyball, art kite flying festival, underwater group wedding, etc. The festival is also a great chance for tourists to know more about Viet Nam through special events. Nha Trang Sea Festival will definitely give you an unforgettable impression about Vietnam's charming beauty as well as time-honored traditional values.

### **Ha Long Carnival**

The festival is joined by thousand of actors, dancers, singers, musicians as well as students. Most of them are the local residents of Ha Long Bay. The highlight of Ha Long Carnival is street parades with variety of colorful costumes and dance on wide streets along the coast. Moreover, a laser, sound and water performance combining with a sparkling aerial firework show is an amazing party of light and color which tourist shouldn't miss at the festival. Ha Long Carnival is the heart of the series of events within the schedule of Ha Long Tourism Week – a tourism promotional celebration which has been held yearly for six years. It's usually taken place in a week in late-April to early-May. On the occasion of the 6<sup>th</sup> celebration in 2012, Ha Long Bay was officially recognized as one of New 7 Wonders of Nature of the world by the New 7 Wonders Organization.

	<b>T</b>	<b>F</b>
46.Both festivals are held yearly at the two famous sea cities in Viet Nam	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
47.Coming to the two festivals, visitors can take part in various cultural and recreational events.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
48.Only professional actors or actresses can take part in Ha Long Carnival	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
49.Nha Trang and Ha Long are internationally well known for their natural beauty.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
50.Ha Long Carnival is held in a week (late-April to early-May), and	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Nha Trang Sea Festival is in June.

- |  |                          |                          |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 51. Weddings can be held in both festivals.  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 52. Ha Long Carnival is older than Nha Trang Sea Festival  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 53. There are several sports events held in both festivals   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 54. Both festivals have the same purpose of promoting tourism.   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 55. Ha Long Bay was officially recognized as one of New 7 Wonders of Nature of the world on its first celebration. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

VII)-Read the passage about Mid-Autumn Festival, and do the tasks that follow.

### Mid-Autumn Festival

Mid-Autumn Festival is held on 15<sup>th</sup> day of the eight lunar month to celebrate biggest full moon in the year. In Viet Nam, this festival is for children (56)\_\_\_\_\_ children are center of all activities on that day. (57)\_\_\_\_\_ the festival is coming, the adults and the parents prepare many different foods - moon cakes, candies, biscuits, jellies, and fruit. (58)\_\_\_\_\_, the children are given many nice lanterns – star lanterns, flower lanterns and diverse funny masks, (59)\_\_\_\_\_ they can light the lantern during the Mid-Autumn night.

(60)\_\_\_\_\_ the autumn is the time of the beginning of the new school year, the adults and parents give gifts to the children. The festival takes place (61)\_\_\_\_\_ people have had good crops. (62)\_\_\_\_\_, it is also the congratulation for the full harvest.

Nowadays, (63)\_\_\_\_\_ some of the traditional toys have been replaced by modern toys, the meaning of the festival has been kept and developed. It is certain that Mid-Autumn Festival is a good example of the traditional culture of the Vietnamese.

**Task 1: Complete each blank in the passage with the correct linking word. (There may be more than one possibility)**

**Task 2: Read the passage again, and then answer the following questions.**

64. When is Mid-Autumn Festival held? What is it for?

\_\_\_\_\_

65. What do the adults and the parents do to prepare for the festival?

---

66. What are children given besides moon cakes?

---

67. What can children do with their lanterns?

---

68. Why is Mid-Autumn Festival also considered the congratulation for the full harvest?

---

69. What is the importance of this festival?

---

VIII)-Connect each pair of sentences, using the conjunction or conjunctive adverb given in brackets.

70. The establishment of the club of Xoan singing in Phu Tho has brought new energy and strength. Villagers in these communes give great contribution to the development of the clubs. **(while)**

---

---

71. Valentine Day is not very popular in Viet Nam. People in big cities send gifts on that day. **(yet)**

---

---

72. Flower buds and blossoms are the symbols for new beginning. These two distinctive flower are widely and purchased during Tet. **(because)**

---

---

73. Homes are often cleaned and decorated before New Year's Eve. The kitchen needs to be cleaned before the 23<sup>rd</sup> night of the last month. **(and)**

---

---

74. Street vendors rush into the city center with peach trees on their bicycles. The streets look like moving pink forests. **(when)**



---

---

IX)-Make sentences about King Hung Temple Festival, using the words and phrases given. You can add some words and make changes.

**King Hung Temple Festival**

75. King Hung Temple Festival/ take place/ yearly/ King Hung Temple/ the 8<sup>th</sup>/ 11<sup>th</sup> day/ the third lunar month.

---

---

---

76. During the festival/ Vietnamese people/ go/ King Hung Temple/ Nghia Linh Mountain, Phu Tho Province/ take part/ this festival.

---

---

---

77. The festival/ feature/ many folk games/ bamboo swings/ rice cooking competitions/ lion dance/ human chess/ water puppet performance/ wrestling/ crossbow shooting, etc.

---

---

---

78. the 10<sup>th</sup> day/ a national ceremony/ held/ participation/ about 40 villages.

---

---

---

79. Governmental leaders/ will lead/ precession/ up/ Upper Temple.

---

---

---

80. There/ a ceremony/ offering incense/ five-fruit trays/ and specialities/ *chung* cakes/ *day* cakes/ which/ two traditional foods/ Vietnam.

---

---

# UNIT 6: FOLK TALES

---

## A. PHONETICS

Make the exclamatory sentences, using the word given. Practise saying the sentences aloud, and pay attention to the intonation.

1. beautiful princess/ My Chau  
\_\_\_\_\_ !
2. cunning prince/ Trong Thuy  
\_\_\_\_\_ !
3. strong and kind young man/ Thach Sanh  
\_\_\_\_\_ !
4. cunning merchant/ Ly Thong  
\_\_\_\_\_ !
5. magical guitar/ Thach Sanh  
\_\_\_\_\_ !
6. wonderful rice pot/ Thach Sanh  
\_\_\_\_\_ !
7. wonderful lamp/ Aladdin  
\_\_\_\_\_ !
8. beautiful voice/ the Little Mermaid  
\_\_\_\_\_ !
9. big bamboo/ Khoai  
\_\_\_\_\_ !
10. delicious food/ *chung anh day* cakes  
\_\_\_\_\_ !

## B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I)-Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. Thach Sanh was very \_\_\_\_\_ when he let Ly Thong and his mother go back to their home town.  
A. selfish                  B. mean                  C. generous                  D. brave
2. The ogre was so \_\_\_\_\_, and was about to catch Thach Sanh with its

sharp claws.

A. fierce                      B. mean                      C. clever                      D. ugly

3. Thach Sanh was so \_\_\_\_\_ that he could push back the troops with his magical guitar and rice pot.

A. kind                      B. clever                      C. hard-working                      D. fast

4. An Tiem was very \_\_\_\_\_ to move to a deserted island.

A. brave                      B. honest                      C. kind                      D. generous

5. Khoai was very \_\_\_\_\_, but his landowner was \_\_\_\_\_.

A. lazy-cunning                      B. clever-brave                      C. honest-wise                      D. honest-cunning

6. Tam was a very \_\_\_\_\_ girl who had to work all day.

A. mean                      B. generous                      C. hard-working                      D. lazy

7. Cam was very \_\_\_\_\_ when she killed the nightingale, cooked it and threw the feathers in the Imperial Garden.

A. wicked                      B. ugly                      C. honest                      D. mean

8. Luu Binh was very \_\_\_\_\_ to invite Duong Le to come and live with him.

A. selfish                      B. kind                      C. mean                      D. brave

II)-Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Simple or Past Continuous tense.

1. Last night I (read)\_\_\_\_\_ when suddenly I (hear)\_\_\_\_\_ a shout.

2. The postman (come)\_\_\_\_\_ while I (have) \_\_\_\_\_ lunch.

3. When we (go)\_\_\_\_\_ out, it (rain) \_\_\_\_\_.

4. (you/watch)\_\_\_\_\_ TV when I (phone) \_\_\_\_\_ you?

5. We (meet)\_\_\_\_\_ Ann at the party yesterday, she (wear)\_\_\_\_\_ a lovely white dress.

6. The boys (break)\_\_\_\_\_ the window while they (play)\_\_\_\_\_ football.

7. I was home late, but my friends (wait)\_\_\_\_\_ when I (arrive)\_\_\_\_\_.

8. He said that he (not drive)\_\_\_\_\_ fast when the accident (happen) \_\_\_\_\_.

9. Tom (fall)\_\_\_\_\_ off the ladder while he (paint) \_\_\_\_\_ the ceiling.

10. What (you/do)\_\_\_\_\_ at this time yesterday?

III)-Put the verbs into the correct form, the Past Continuous or Simple Past.

1. When I last (see)\_\_\_\_\_ them, they (try)\_\_\_\_\_ to find a new flat near the office.
2. I (walk)\_\_\_\_\_ along the street when I suddenly (feel)\_\_\_\_\_ something hit me in the back.
3. When we (drive)\_\_\_\_\_ down the hill, a strange object (appear)\_\_\_\_\_ in the sky.
4. How fast (she/drive)\_\_\_\_\_ when the accident (happen)\_\_\_\_\_?
5. My mother (wait)\_\_\_\_\_ for me when I (come)\_\_\_\_\_ home?
6. Mrs. Smith (invite)\_\_\_\_\_ Mrs. Quyen to have dinner while Mrs. Quyen (visit)\_\_\_\_\_ the USA.
7. I (not want)\_\_\_\_\_ to go with him because I (wait)\_\_\_\_\_ for a phone call.
8. The doorbell (ring)\_\_\_\_\_ while Tom (watch)\_\_\_\_\_ TV.
9. It suddenly (begin)\_\_\_\_\_ to rain while Linda (sit)\_\_\_\_\_ in the garden.
10. The lights (go)\_\_\_\_\_ out while we (have)\_\_\_\_\_ dinner.

IV)-Put the verb in brackets into the Past Simple or Past Progressive tense.

1. When my uncle (come)\_\_\_\_\_, we (water)\_\_\_\_\_ the plants and flowers in the garden.
2. Thu (talk)\_\_\_\_\_ to her friend, Hoa, on the phone at 8 o'clock last night.
3. Lan (practise)\_\_\_\_\_ the piano while her sister (read)\_\_\_\_\_ comics at 7 o'clock last night.
4. The monkeys (climb)\_\_\_\_\_ up the trees when we (visit)\_\_\_\_\_ to zoo yesterday morning.
5. Ba (talk)\_\_\_\_\_ with his classmate when the principal (enter)\_\_\_\_\_ their classroom.
6. Last night I (make)\_\_\_\_\_ a cake when the lights (go)\_\_\_\_\_ out.
7. While I (cross)\_\_\_\_\_ the street, I (step)\_\_\_\_\_ on a banana skin and (fall)\_\_\_\_\_ heavily.
8. It (begin)\_\_\_\_\_ to rain when I (plant)\_\_\_\_\_ some flowers in the garden.
9. When I (arrive)\_\_\_\_\_, the teacher (write)\_\_\_\_\_ on the blackboard.

10. When they (walk)\_\_\_\_\_ down the stairs, they (hear)\_\_\_\_\_ a strange noise.

V)-Complete the sentences with verbs in brackets in the past continuous.

Last Saturday, we were very busy. In the morning, ...

1. I (do)\_\_\_\_\_ my homework.
2. my parents (shop)\_\_\_\_\_.
3. my sister (chat)\_\_\_\_\_ to her friends online.
4. my grandparents (drive)\_\_\_\_\_ to our house.

At two o'clock in the afternoon, ...

5. I (make)\_\_\_\_\_ tea for everyone.
6. my sister and my mum (cook)\_\_\_\_\_ dinner.
7. my grandmother (sleep)\_\_\_\_\_ in front of the TV.

At five o'clock in the afternoon, ...

8. we (have)\_\_\_\_\_ a snack.

At six o'clock in the evening, ...

9. my parents and my grandmother (drink)\_\_\_\_\_ tea.
10. my grandfather (try)\_\_\_\_\_ to send an e-mail on my computer.

VI)-Read the following fable and put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or the past continuous.

### **The Woodcutter and his Axe**

One day, a woodcutter (1. cut)\_\_\_\_\_ a tree on the bank of the river when his axe (2. slip)\_\_\_\_\_ from his hands and (3. fall)\_\_\_\_\_ into the water. The poor man (4. be)\_\_\_\_\_ so sad that he (5. start)\_\_\_\_\_ to cry bitterly.

At this moment, an angel (6. appear)\_\_\_\_\_ there and (7. ask)\_\_\_\_\_ the woodcutter why he (8. cry)\_\_\_\_\_. He (9. tell)\_\_\_\_\_ the story, and the angel (10. feel)\_\_\_\_\_ sorry and (11. drive)\_\_\_\_\_ into the river to find the lost axe. Later, he (12. appear)\_\_\_\_\_ from the water with a gold axe in his hand, but the woodcutter (13. refuse)\_\_\_\_\_ to take it, saying that it (14. not be)\_\_\_\_\_ his axe. The angel (15. drive)\_\_\_\_\_ into the water

once again and (16. appear)\_\_\_\_\_ with an axe that was made of silver. The woodcutter (17. be)\_\_\_\_\_ still sad. He (18. shake)\_\_\_\_\_ his head harder and (19. tell)\_\_\_\_\_ the angel that his own axe (20. be)\_\_\_\_\_ made of iron. The third time the angel (21. come)\_\_\_\_\_ out of the water with an iron axe in his hand. Filled with joy, the woodcutter (22. cry)\_\_\_\_\_, "This belong to me".

He (23. thank)\_\_\_\_\_ the angel for helping him. The angel (24. be)\_\_\_\_\_ greatly impressed by his honesty, and he (25. give)\_\_\_\_\_ the woodcutter the other two axes as a reward for his honesty.

VII)-Complete the conversation, using the past continuous of the verbs in brackets. Practise the conversation with your partner.

Nick: Hi, Hoa. What \_\_\_\_\_ (1. you/ do) yesterday afternoon? I tried to chat, but you didn't reply. \_\_\_\_\_ (2. you/ play) badminton?

Hoa: Hello, Nick. No, I (3. not play)\_\_\_\_\_ badminton. It (4. rain)\_\_\_\_\_ all afternoon.

Nick: Really? The sun (5. shine)\_\_\_\_\_ here.

Hoa: Well, it (6. not shine)\_\_\_\_\_ here. I didn't turn on my computer because I (7. watch)\_\_\_\_\_ TV. There was a great film on. Did you see it?

Nick: No. I (8. help)\_\_\_\_\_ my parents. They (9. clean)\_\_\_\_\_ the house for a party.

Hoa: My dad (10. clean)\_\_\_\_\_ the house, too.

Nick: \_\_\_\_\_ (11. he/get) ready for a party?

Hoa: No, we're going to sell the house. We're going to the countryside.

Nick: What! When? You can't...

Hoa: Nick ...

Nick: Yes?

Hoa: I (12. wind)\_\_\_\_\_ you up!

*Note: to wind someone up = to annoy or upset someone (trêu chọc ai)*

VIII)-Read this fable, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each gap.

### Wisdom

A farmer was ploughing his field. Sometimes, he shouted at and beat the buffalo that was (1)\_\_\_\_\_ the plough. A tiger happened to stroll along the edge of the field.

"Buffalo, you are so big. (2)\_\_\_\_\_ do you let this weak man beat you?", he asked.

The buffalo answered, "The man is small (3)\_\_\_\_\_ his wisdom is big."

The tiger did not understand what wisdom was (4)\_\_\_\_\_ he shouted at the man. "Hey you, man, what is wisdom? Let me see it."

"Wisdom? Oh, my wisdom (5)\_\_\_\_\_ at home," replied the man, looking at the tiger's teeth and claws.

"Go home (6)\_\_\_\_\_ get it. Bring it here so that I can see it," the tiger ordered.

"Oh, no! I am afraid that you will eat my buffalo (7)\_\_\_\_\_ I am gone. (8)\_\_\_\_\_ you agree to be tied with rope, I will run home and fetch the wisdom."

The tiger agreed. (9)\_\_\_\_\_ fastening the tiger, the farmer beat its back.

"(10)\_\_\_\_\_ is my wisdom. This is my wisdom", he explained.

- |    |           |            |             |            |
|----|-----------|------------|-------------|------------|
| 1. | A. pull   | B. pulling | C. pulled   | D. to pull |
| 2. | A. What   | B. How     | C. When     | D. Why     |
| 3. | A. and    | B. but     | C. so       | D. or      |
| 4. | A. and    | B. but     | C. although | D. so      |
| 5. | A. is     | B. are     | C. was      | D. were    |
| 6. | A. but    | B. and     | C. so       | D. yet     |
| 7. | A. why    | B. while   | C. although | D. if      |
| 8. | A. While  | B. Because | C. Although | D. If      |
| 9. | A. Before | B. After   | C. Because  | D. But     |

10. A. Here

B. There

C. She

D. That

### C. SPEAKING

**I)-Complete the conversation between Nick and Phong about the legend of the Mid-Autumn Festival with the responses given (A-H). Practise the conversation with your partner.**

- A. One day, Hou Yi met Wangmu (the Queen of Heaven) on the way to find his old friend. Wangmu presented him an elixir which, if took, would cause him to move up immediately to heaven and become a god.
- B. Your memory is good. And then Hou Yi took the food that Chang E liked to an altar and offered it as a sacrifice for her. After hearing that Chang E become a goddess, folk people also offered sacrifices to Chang E to pray for peace and good luck. Since then, the custom of sacrificing to the moon has been spread among the folklore.
- C. On hearing of this amazing feat and the hero who performed it, people came from far and wide to learn from him. Peng Meng was among these people. Later, Hou Yi married a beautiful and kind-hearted woman named Chang E and lived a happy life.
- D. On realizing what happened to his wife, Hou Yi was so sad that he shouted Chang E's name to the sky. He was amazed to see a figure which looked just like his wife appeared in the Moon.
- E. In some Asian countries, like China or Viet Nam, we accepted the story of Chang E the origin of the Mid-Autumn Festival.
- F. You're right. Three days later, while Hou Yi was out hunting, Peng Meng rushed into the backyard and demanded that Chang E should hand over the elixir. Knowing that she could not win, she took out the elixir and swallowed it immediately. The moment she drank it, she flew out of the window and up into the sky. Chang E's great love for her husband drew her towards the Moon, which is the nearest place to the earth on the heaven.
- G. It is said that in ancient times, ten suns existed and the extreme heat made people's lives very difficult. It was the hero Hou Yi, who, owing to his great strength, shot down nine of the ten suns.
- H. That's it. Unfortunately, Peng Meng secretly saw Hou Yi give the potion to his wife.



Phong: Hi, Nick. Nice to see you on Monday. Did you enjoy the Mid-Autumn Festival in Viet Nam this year?

Nick: Hello, Phong. Thanks a lot. I really enjoyed this festival. It's for all teenagers like us.

Phong: Yeah. It's colourful and very exciting with moon cakes and the lanterns in all shapes.

Nick: But I had a question. Did the festival have an origin from any legend in your country?

Phong: (1) \_\_\_\_\_

Nick: What did the legend begin?

Phong: (2) \_\_\_\_\_

Nick: Awesome! What a hero!

Phong: (3) \_\_\_\_\_

Nick: Wow, good news for him. What happened next, Phong?

Phong: (4) \_\_\_\_\_

Nick: Really? Elixir? A liquid with magical power!

Phong: (5) \_\_\_\_\_

Nick: I don't think something good would happen to the hero and his wife.

Phong: (6) \_\_\_\_\_

Nick: I feel sorry for Hong Yi and Chang E. What did Hou Yi do after that?

Phong: (7) \_\_\_\_\_

Nick: I also read it in the book: we could see the image of Chang E and her palace at full moon.

Phong: (8) \_\_\_\_\_

Nick: How wonderful the legend is! Thank you so much, Phong!

Phong: You're welcome! Let's go to our classroom!

II)-Read the story, and then complete the conversation. Practise it with a partner.

**The Emperor's New Clothes: a fairy tale by Hans Christian Andersen**

Long ago, a foolish emperor didn't spend any time doing the things an emperor should do, but he was only interested in trying on new clothes and parading them in front of his people.

One day, two strangers arrived, offering the chance to try some magical cloth, which would be invisible to anyone who was a fool, or not suitable for their job.

The Emperor ordered some cloth to be prepared, paying two bags of gold for it. The Chief Minister and a servant couldn't see the cloth, but neither wanted to tell the truth because they didn't want to lose their jobs. The Emperor thought the same thing, and ordered a suit of clothes to be made at the cost of more gold.

The cheating strangers helped him into the imaginary clothes and he went on a procession through the town. Nobody wanted to admit that they couldn't see the clothes, until a small boy shouted that the Emperor had nothing on at all. This caused the rest of the crowd to start laughing. The Emperor just carried on with his parade – thinking the people were all the fools.

A: I've just read a very interesting story named "The Emperor's New Clothes"

B: Really? Do you know the author of that story?

A: It was written (1) \_\_\_\_\_

B: What kind of story is it?

A: I think (2) \_\_\_\_\_

B: Who are the main characters in it?

A: They are (3) \_\_\_\_\_

B: The Emperor? How was he? Was he kind to his people?

A: Of course, not. He was foolish and he (4) \_\_\_\_\_

B: What happened then?

A: One day, two strangers arrived, and they told (5) \_\_\_\_\_ which was invisible to fools.

B: Sounds exciting. What happened next?

A: The Chief Minister and the servant pretended to see the magic cloth, and the Emperor (6) \_\_\_\_\_ .

B: What happened when the “magic” cloth was completed?

A: The Emperor went on a procession through the town. Nobody wanted to admit that they couldn’t see the clothes, until (7) \_\_\_\_\_

B: What’s the end of the story?

A: (8) \_\_\_\_\_

B: I think the Emperor was the real fool because he was cheated by the two strangers.

III)-Read the story summaries below. Decide which story you would like to read. After that, ask and answer the questions about the stories with your partner.

❶ **Title:** Hansel and Gretel

**Genre:** fairy tale (one of Grimm brother’s fairy tales)

**Plot:** A woodcutter and his second-wife couldn’t afford to feed his own children. The step-mother suggested leaving them in the forest for a while. The children, Hansel and Gretel, heard that and they left their home. Hansel used small rocks to mark the way back home. The two kids had no food when they found a witch’s house made of bread, cake and sugar. Of course, they ate a lot and didn’t die. The witch asked them to stay. After that, she locked up Hansel to fatten him, and made Gretel work hard around the house. This went on for a while until the witch decided to eat both of them. She asked Gretel to check the oven’s heat from inside. Gretel tricked the witch into doing that instead. The witch was burned up and the children went home with a lot of her treasure. Unluckily, the stepmother died. The kids and the father lived happily ever since.

❷ **Title:** The Bronze Pig

**Genre:** fairy tale (one of Hans Christian Andersen’s fairy tales)

**Plot:** A poor young boy in Florence, Italy, was begging for money, but was not successful. He slept on top of a famous paintings. The next morning, the boy woke up and went home. His stepmother made him go away for not bringing in any money, so

he ran away. A glove-maker and his wife took him in. The boy met an artist and he taught the boy to draw. He grew up to become a very talented artist who painted many beautiful pictures, including painting of the bronze pig.

A: I want to read *Hansel and Gretel/ The Bronze Pig*.

B: What kind of the story is it?

A: It's a fairy tale.

B: Who are the main characters in it?

A: (1) \_\_\_\_\_

B: What is the story about?

A: (2) \_\_\_\_\_

B: What happened first?

A: (3) \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

B: What happened next?

A: (4) \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

B: What is the end of the story?

A: (5) \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

#### **D. READING**

1)-Read the following passage and then answer the questions.

Once upon a time, there was a girl called Cinderella who did all the work in the kitchen while her lazy sisters did nothing. One night her sisters went to a ball at the

palace, Cinderella was left at home, feeling very sad. After a time her fairy godmother appeared and told Cinderella that she could go to the ball, but she has to return home by midnight. So she went to the ball in a beautiful dress and a wonderful coach. She danced with the prince, but at midnight she ran back home, leaving one of her shoes on the dance floor. The prince wanted to see her again and went to every house in the capital until he found that the shoe was right size for Cinderella. The prince and Cinderella were married and lived happily ever after.

1. Where did Cinderella's sisters go one night?

---

2. How was Cinderella when she was left at home?

---

3. Who appeared and helped Cinderella?

---

4. What did Cinderella do at the ball?

---

5. What was the end of the story?

---

II)-Read this legend, and do the tasks that follow.

### **Da Trang and the Magic Pearl**

Long ago, there was a hunter named Da Trang who lived near the edge of the forest. One day, when he returned from hunting, he was terrified to see two bright green snakes moving quickly through the grass to the temple! But when he saw them raise their heads to listen to the prayer coming from the nearby temple, he thought, "They are surely harmless. Maybe they are sacred snakes."

When passing the temple one morning, Da Trang saw a big cobra, jaws open, attacking the snakes. He raised his bow and shot the cobra to save the snakes.

When the arrow struck him, the cobra hissed horribly and moved away as the male snake chased it down the hill. The female snake was badly wounded, and soon died. Da Trang buried her under the temple.

The male snake gave him a beautiful white pearl to allow one to understand the language of animals as a gift of its gratitude.

The King had Da Trang bring the magic pearl to the palace because the King was very enthusiastic to hear about the animals' conversation and spent a great deal of time listening to them.

One beautiful spring morning, the King and Da Trang went sailing. While the fish were singing happily, Da Trang burst out laughing and dropped the magic pearl into the sea.

Da Trang ordered an army of workmen who brought hundreds of cartloads of sand to the seashore to fill up the sea to find his lost pearl, but he failed and died. Before death, he asked to be buried near the seashore.

Nowadays, when you are at the seashore early in the morning, you can see many small crabs, believed to do the work of Da Trang.

**Task 1: Match a word in column A with its definition in column B, writing the answer in each blank.**

Answer	A	B
_____	11. prayer (n)	F. having a connection with a god
_____	12. sacred (adj)	G. to make a sound like a long 's'
_____	13. bow (n)	H. the words that you use when you speak to a god
_____	14. hiss (v)	I. a weapon for a shooting arrows

**Task 2: Read the passage again, and then answer the following questions.**

15. Why did Da Trang think that the two bright green snakes were harmless?

\_\_\_\_\_

16. What did he do to save the snakes when the cobra attacked them?

\_\_\_\_\_

17. What did the male snake give him? Why?

\_\_\_\_\_

18. Why was the pearl called a magic one?

\_\_\_\_\_

19. Why did Da Trang lose the magic pearl?

\_\_\_\_\_

20. What did he do before his death?

---

**Task 3: Read again, and then complete the details of the legend by filling in each blank with ONE suitable word.**

**Main characters**                      **Character 1:** Da Trang. He was (11)\_\_\_\_\_, but he did an impossible thing.

**Character 2, 3:** The green snakes. They were (12)\_\_\_\_\_, sacred and (13)\_\_\_\_\_.

**Character 4:** The cobra. It was (14)\_\_\_\_\_.

**Plot: beginning**                      Long ago, there was a (15)\_\_\_\_\_ named Da Trang who lived near the edge of the forest.

**Plot: middle**                      One day, when he (16)\_\_\_\_\_ the temple, he saw a big cobra, attacking the snakes. He (17)\_\_\_\_\_ to shoot the cobra to save the snakes. The female snake died (18)\_\_\_\_\_ Da Trang buried her under the temple. The male snake gave him a magic pearl to allow one to understand the language of animals.

   The King was also (19)\_\_\_\_\_ in the magic pearl, and asked him to bring the magic pearl to the palace.

**Plot: end**                      One day, (20)\_\_\_\_\_ sailing on the boat with the King, Da Trang dropped the pearl into the sea. He tried to fill up the sea with sand but he failed and died.

## **E. WRITING**

**Make sentences about the Legend of the Milky Way, using the words and phrases given. You can add some words and make changes. The first two sentences have been done for you as examples.**

### **The Legend of the Milky Way**

0. Once upon a time, there was a very beautiful and charming princess, named Chuc Nu.
00. She was a very hard-working lady and she was often sitting on the shore of the Silver River to sew clothes.
1. One day/ a young man, named Nguu Lang/ heard/ his buffaloes/ the river

- 
2. He/ fall in love/ the princess at first sight/ she/ love/ him, too.
- 
3. The King of Heaven/ not allow/ daughter/ marry Nguu Lang.
- 
4. But the couple/ have to promise/ continue their work/ after marriage.
- 
5. They/ enjoy/ being married/ and/ they/ forget their promise.
- 
6. The King/ become furious/ and/ order/ them/ separate.
- 
7. Each of them/ would live/ one side of the river/ and/ could only look at each other/ across the river.
- 
8. The King/ allow them/ meet once a year/ the seventh month/ the lunar year.
- 
9. When/ they/ meet/ they/ usually cry/ joy.
- 
10. They/ cry even more bitterly/ when/ it/ time for separation.
- 
11. That is why/ it/ rain/ heavily/ the beginning/ the seventh lunar month in Vietnam.
- 
12. If/ you/ look at/ the sky/ clear nights/ you may see/ Silver River/ which/ look like/ a long milky white strip.
- 
- 

TEST (UNIT 6)



I)-Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. The toad was very \_\_\_\_\_ because he tried to find way to the heaven to sue God.  
A. brave                      B. kind                      C. generous                      D. mean
2. The King was very \_\_\_\_\_ to allow his daughter. Tien Dung, to travel to many wonderful places of the kingdom.  
A. wise                      B. mean                      C. kind                      D. wicked
3. The Peacock was well known to be a/an \_\_\_\_\_ animal, so he just applied black colour to the Crow's feathers.  
A. hard-working    B. lazy                      C. ugly                      D. clever
4. The wife of the fisherman was very \_\_\_\_\_ when she demanded for bigger and bigger things.  
A. kind                      B. generous                      C. greedy                      D. fierce
5. Ali Baba was very \_\_\_\_\_ when he also used the words "Open Sesame!" to enter the cave of treasures.  
A. wise                      B. cunning                      C. kind                      D. evil
6. The servant was very \_\_\_\_\_ to mark other houses with white chalk so that the thieves couldn't find Ali Baba's house.  
A. mean                      B. wicked                      C. kind                      D. clever

II)-Read the following fable and put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or the past continuous.

### **The Fisherman and His Wife**

A fisherman and his wife (7. live)\_\_\_\_\_ in a little hut by the sea. One day, while the fisherman (8. perform)\_\_\_\_\_ his usual work, he (9. catch)\_\_\_\_\_ a fish who (10. say)\_\_\_\_\_ he (11. be)\_\_\_\_\_ actually a magical prince as well as a talking fish.

The fisherman (12. agree)\_\_\_\_\_ to let him go.

The wife (13. not like)\_\_\_\_\_ that, and (14. tell)\_\_\_\_\_ him to go back and ask for a cottage. This wish (15. come)\_\_\_\_\_ true, but the cottage (16.

not be)\_\_\_\_\_ nice enough so the wife then (17. send)\_\_\_\_\_ the fisherman (18. be)\_\_\_\_\_ the rulers of the country, and then to be emperors.

Finally, the wife (19. want)\_\_\_\_\_ to be like God. On returning home, the fisherman (20. find)\_\_\_\_\_ that his wife (21. sit)\_\_\_\_\_ in their humble hut again.

III)-Complete the conversation about the legend of “The Toad is the God’s Uncle” with the responses given (A-F). Practise the conversation with your partner.

A. And there is a Vietnamese saying:

“Toad is God’s uncle

Beat him, God beats back.”

B. The toad, the God, the Thunder genie and the animals on Earth.

C. After all, God had to invite the great toad and all of his friends into the court. The toad told God that there was no rain on the earth for four years. God immediately made rain and carefully told the toad just to grind his teeth if the earth needed water.

D. Once upon a time, there was no rain for long, long time. The ground cracked all over, all plants and animals had to suffer from thirst.

E. Yes. There was a great toad, and he tried to find way to the heaven to let God know what life on the earth was. He was followed by a crab, a bee, a fox, a bear and a tiger.

F. You’re right! Finally, they all came to the heaven, and the toad beat the drum loudly. The army from the heaven including the Thunder genie were beaten by the animals.

A: I’ve just read a great story named “The Toad is the God’s Uncle”.

B: Really? What’s it about?

A: It’s about a toad who sued the God for rain.

B: Who are the main characters?

A: (22) \_\_\_\_\_

B: And what’s the story?

A: (23) \_\_\_\_\_

B: They were to die soon.

A: (24) \_\_\_\_\_

B: I see. Each type of animals has a different power.

A: (25) \_\_\_\_\_

B: How powerful and clever animals were, especially the toad!

A: (26) \_\_\_\_\_

B: I see. Is it from that day on it may rain if toad grinds his teeth?

A: (27) \_\_\_\_\_

IV)-Read the story and match the phrases/ sentences A-G with the gaps 28-34.

### **The Farmers and his Sons**

- A. as soon as their father had died
- B. who had worked hard in his vineyard
- C. what their father had meant by the great treasure
- D. its own reward
- E. and all the time as they were working they wondered what their father had left for them
- F. They felt that their hard work had been for nothing
- G. Soon they had dug up every inch of the vineyard.

There was once an old, dying farmer (28)\_\_\_\_\_. Before he died he wanted to teach his three sons how to be good farmers. So he called them to him and said, 'My boys, before I die I want you to know that there is a great treasure buried in the vineyard. Promise me that you will look for it when I am dead.'

The sons promised and (29)\_\_\_\_\_, they began looking for the treasure. They worked very hard in the hot sun (30)\_\_\_\_\_. In their minds, they thought of boxes of gold coins, diamond necklaces and other such things. (31)\_\_\_\_\_. But they found not a simple penny. They were very upset. (32) \_\_\_\_\_. But then the grapes started to appear on the vines and their grapes were the biggest and best in the neighbourhood, and they sold them for a lot of money.

Now they understood (33)\_\_\_\_\_ and they lived happily and wealthily ever after.

"Hard work brings (34)\_\_\_\_\_."

Note:

- *wine* (n) = the climbing plant that grapes grown on (cây nho), *vineyard* (n) = a piece of land where vines are grown (vườn nho)

V)-Read the legend, and put the following paragraphs into the correct order. Write the answer (B-G) in the blanks. The first paragraph (A) has been done for you.

### Legend of the Water Melon

0. A. Once upon a time, the sixth son of King Hung the Fifth named An Tiem disobeyed the King's order and was asked to move to a deserted island.
35. \_\_\_\_\_ B. King Hung was very proud of having a son who was brave and strong enough to overcome difficulties without anyone's help. An Tiem was immediately called back to the court. He brought his fruit with him to offer the King, his father. The King gave him his crown and An Tiem became King Hung the Sixth.
36. \_\_\_\_\_ C. An Tiem carved the island's name and his own on some of the fruit and threw them into the sea. Later, seamen found the strange fruit with An Tiem's name floating in the sea.
37. \_\_\_\_\_ D. Since then the fruit which was called "dua hau" has become the symbol of luck. People often offer it to relatives and friends as a New Year present.
38. \_\_\_\_\_ E. When the dry season came, all the plants were dry and the well had no water left. One day An Tiem was so tired and thirsty that he tasted the fruit. He found out that it tasted delicious and satisfied his thirst. He tried to grow the plant around his house then. Soon the whole island was covered with the green fruit.
39. \_\_\_\_\_ F. Soon, words about the fruit reached the mainland and many merchants tried to find the way to the island. The island was now crowded. Many boats came and went. An Tiem helped anyone who wanted to settle on the island. Soon, news about that reached the King.
40. \_\_\_\_\_ G. The Prince had to build his own shelter, dig a well for water, and fish and hunt animals for food. One day, he found a green fruit as big and round as a ball. He split the fruit into halves and found the inside of the fruit red. He did not eat it because he was afraid it was poisonous.

VI)-Read this legend, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each gap.

**Lac Long Quan and Au Co (Origins of the Vietnamese)**

Once upon (41)\_\_\_\_\_, in the land called Lac Viet, Lac Long Quan, the dragon king of the ocean, lived (42)\_\_\_\_\_ and sometimes turned to the land to help people fight against demons, (43)\_\_\_\_\_ them to grow rice and cut wood for building houses.

Lac Long Quan (44)\_\_\_\_\_ Au Co – the daughter of Agriculture Saint. The couple lived in harmony in a palace. Later, Au Co gave birth to a one-hundred-egg bag, hatching to 100 sons. One day, Lac Long Quan (45)\_\_\_\_\_ that he couldn't live (46)\_\_\_\_\_ the land all the time. He took 50 of their sons to settle down into the sea. The rest (47)\_\_\_\_\_ Au Co to go up to the mountain.

Although they separated, they remembered to help and protect (48)\_\_\_\_\_ in need. The eldest son, who followed the mother with 49 brothers, (49)\_\_\_\_\_ King Hung. He set up his capital in Phong Chau and gave his country the name Van Lang.

From the story, the Vietnamese (50)\_\_\_\_\_ always proud of the noble origin: dragon's children and family's grandchildren.

- |     |                     |                 |                 |                    |
|-----|---------------------|-----------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| 41. | A. time             | B. a time       | C. the time     | D. times           |
| 42. | A. on water         | B. on the water | C. under water  | D. under the water |
| 43. | A. teach            | B. ask          | C. learn        | D. make            |
| 44. | A. got married with | B. got married  | C. married      | D. married with    |
| 45. | A. was believed     | B. was thought  | C. considering  | D. felt            |
| 46. | A. at               | B. on           | C. in           | D. under           |
| 47. | A. follow           | B. following    | C. followed     | D. were followed   |
| 48. | A. other            | B. each other   | C. another      | D. others          |
| 49. | A. become           | B. becoming     | C. was becoming | D. became          |
| 50. | A. is               | B. are          | C. was          | D. were            |

VII)-Read this legend, and do the tasks that follow.

**Kitchen Gods**

Once upon a time, there was a childless couple. The wife was faithful and loved the husband passionately while the husband was treated his wife badly. One day he beat the poor wife with a stick and dismissed her from home. The women had to come to another place. She then got married with a kind man, and they lived in harmony.

One afternoon when her husband had gone for hunting, a beggar came and asked for some food. The woman was kind; she filled the poor beggar's bag and recognized that the beggar was her former husband. The man also recognized his wife then. She felt sorry for the man when hearing that from the day he dismissed her, he was deeply sad and regretful. So he decided to go away to find her until he spent all money and became a beggar.

After being offered a big meal, the man was drunk so the woman had to drag him out and hid him in a stack because it was time for her recent husband to come back from the forest.

After a while, there was a knock at the door, the hunter appeared with a deer on his back. He then happily asked the woman to go to the market to prepare for the dinner. When the woman came back, she found that the stack of straw, where the drunk former husband was sleeping, had been burned with a deer roasted. She cried painfully, and then jumped into the fire. The hunter didn't know what had happened and what to do but jumped into the fire to die beside his wife.

At that moment, God was in the heaven, he was moved by the story so he turned three of them into three parts of the earthen tripod so that they could live side by side forever and conferred them with the title of Kitchen Gods to oversee all the cooking of people. Every year, they all together came back to the heaven on the 23<sup>rd</sup> of the 12<sup>th</sup> lunar month to report to God.

**Task 1: Match a word in column A with its definition in column B, writing the answer in each blank.**

Answer	A	B
_____	51. childless (adj)	A. to give an official title or honour to somebody
_____	52. dismiss (v)	B. having no children
_____	53. moved (adj)	C. to watch something to make sure that it is don

		correctly
_____	54. confer (v)	D. having strong feelings of sadness or sympathy
_____	55. oversee (v)	E. to order somebody to leave

**Task 2: Read the passage again, and then answer the following questions.**

56. Why did the wife have to leave for another place?

\_\_\_\_\_

57. What did the former husband do after dismissing his wife from home?

\_\_\_\_\_

58. Why did the wife jump into the fire?

\_\_\_\_\_

59. What did the hunter do then?

\_\_\_\_\_

60. Why did God turn them into three parts of the earthen tripod?

\_\_\_\_\_

**Task 3: Read again, and then complete the details of the legend by filling in each blank with a suitable word or phrase or not more than four words.**

**Main characters**

**Character 1:** The wife. She was kind, and (61)\_\_\_\_\_.

**Character 2:** The former husband. He treated his wife badly, but after that he felt (62)\_\_\_\_\_.

**Character 3:** The recent husband (the hunter). He was kind and (63)\_\_\_\_\_ his wife very much.

**Plot: beginning**

Once upon a time, there was a childless couple. The husband treated his wife badly. One day he beat the poor wife and dismissed her from home. The women had to (64)\_\_\_\_\_. She then got married with a kind man, and they (65)\_\_\_\_\_.

**Plot: middle**

One afternoon, when her husband had gone for hunting, a beggar came and asked for some food. The woman recognized that the beggar was her former husband. She (66)\_\_\_\_\_ her former husband when hearing that from the day he dismissed her, he was deeply sad and regretful. Therefore, he (67)\_\_\_\_\_ to find her until he spent all money and became a beggar.

After a big meal, the man was drunk so the woman had to pull him out and hid him in a stack of straw (68)\_\_\_\_\_ time for her recent husband to come back from the forest.

**Plot: end** The hunter appeared with a deer on his back. He then happily asked the woman to go to the market to prepare for the dinner.

When the woman came back, she found that the stack of straw, where her drunk former husband was sleeping, had been burned with a deer roasted. She cried painfully, and then (69)\_\_\_\_\_. The hunter didn't know what had happened and (70)\_\_\_\_\_ but jumped into the fire to die beside his wife.

God turned three of them into three part of the earthen tripod so that they could live side by side forever and conferred them at Kitchen Gods to oversee all the cooking of people.

VIII)-Make sentences about the fairy tale "The Brave Tin Soldier" by Hans Christian Andersen, using the words and phrases given. You can add some words and make changes.

71. Twenty-five tin toy soldiers/ given/ the boy/ a birthday present.

---

---

---

72. The last toy soldier/ only one le/ they/ ran out of tin.

---

---

73. The one-legged soldier/ see/ the paper dancer/ the table/ and/ fall/ in love/ her.

---

---

74. The soldier/ placed/ the window sill/ an/ knocked out/ the window.

---

75. He/ put/ a paper boat/ and/ wash away.

---

76. The soldier/ eaten/ a fish.

---

77. When/ the fish/ caught, sold, and cut open/ the soldier/ found inside.

---



78. The soldier/ taken back/ the playroom/ and/ he/ thrown onto the fire.

\_\_\_\_\_

79. The paper dancer/ blown onto the fire.

\_\_\_\_\_

80. The soldier/ melt/ a heart shape.

\_\_\_\_\_

TEST YOURSELF 2

I)-Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ the head of the household cleans the dust and ashes from the altars, children are in charge of sweeping and scrubbing the floor.  
A. When                      B. While                      C. Because                      D. Although
2. Seven days before Tet, each Vietnamese family offers a farewell ceremony for "Ong Tao"(the Kitchen Gods) to go up to Heaven Palace, \_\_\_\_\_ his task is to make an annual report to the Jade Emperor of the family's affair throughout the year.  
A. and                      B. but                      C. so                      D. yet
3. \_\_\_\_\_ the yellow apricot blossoms are more adaptable to the hot weather of southern regions, the pink peach blossoms match well with the dry, cold weather from the North.  
A. If                      B. Although                      C. When                      D. While
4. Lucky money is put in red envelopes, \_\_\_\_\_ the red envelopes symbolize luck and wealth.  
A. and                      B. because                      C. so                      D. yet
5. \_\_\_\_\_ you take the fruit, you should think of grower.  
A. Although                      B. However                      C. When                      D. While
6. You \_\_\_\_\_ address a person older than you as Mrs., Miss, Ms. or Mr. until the person allows you to use her or his first name.  
A. should                      B. shouldn't                      C. don't have to                      D. could
7. \_\_\_\_\_ tips are not given in fast shops, tipping is the usual custom in expensive restaurants in England.

A. However      B. Moreover      C. Even      D. Although

8. It is the \_\_\_\_\_ for Australians to eat with their fingers at barbecues or picnics outside the home.

A. habit      B. belief      C. custom      D. tradition

II)-Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

9. The Mountain Spirit (Son Tinh) was very \_\_\_\_\_, but the Sea Spirit (Thuy Tinh) was \_\_\_\_\_.

A. gentle-wise      B. fierce-gentle      C. gentle-fierce      D. wicked-ugly

10. I think An Tiem was very \_\_\_\_\_ to carve the island's name and his own name on the water melon and threw them into the sea.

A. wise      B. mean      C. generous      D. fierce

11. The Crow was so \_\_\_\_\_ that he painted the Peacock's feathers with bright and beautiful colours.

A. pretty      B. brave      C. clever      D. beautiful

12. The Little Mermaid was so \_\_\_\_\_ that she didn't kill the prince with the knife.

A. brave      B. pretty      C. clever      D. generous

13. The magician had a brother, who was even more \_\_\_\_\_, and he wanted to kill Aladdin.

A. wicked      B. fierce      C. ugly      D. mean

14. The elder brother was \_\_\_\_\_ when he gave his brother only a starfruit tree.

A. lazy      B. mean      C. generous      D. clever

15. The \_\_\_\_\_ king kept all the rice to himself when his people had no food. He was very \_\_\_\_\_.

A. selfish-cruel      B. selfish-wise      C. generous-cruel      D. generous-cunning

16. Giant eagles and waves were very \_\_\_\_\_ during Captain Sinbad's voyages.

A. wise      B. ugly      C. fierce      D. generous

III)-Match each Aesop's fable with its moral. Write the answer in each blank.

Answer	Aesop's fables	Morals
_____	17. Hercules and the Wagoner: A worker was pulling a cart along a country road when the wheels were deep in the mud. He did nothing but shouted out to call Hercules to come and help him. Hercules appeared and said, "Put your shoulder to the wheels, and never call me for help."	A. A little thing in hand is worth more than a great thing in prospect.
_____	18. The Tortoise and the Hare: The hare always boasted about how fast he could run. The hare soon left the tortoise behind. The hare believed that he would win, and he stopped to take a nap. When he woke up, he found that the tortoise arrived before him.	B. Try before you trust.
_____	19. The Lion and the Eagle: An eagle wanted to make friends with a lion. But the lion said that, "How can I trust anyone as a friend who can fly away whenever he pleases?"	C. There is no believing a liar even when he speaks the truth.
_____	20. The Fisherman and the Little Fish: After fishing all day, a fisherman caught only a little fish. The fish asked the man to let him go and said, "If you put me back into the river, I shall soon grow, then you can make a fine meal off me." But the fisherman said, "My little fish, maybe I won't catch you later."	D. Self-help is the best help
_____	21. The Shepherd Boy and the Wolf: A shepherd boy who watched a flock of sheep often cried to ask villagers to come and help him because the wolf attacked his sheep, and it was only a lie. However, the wolf came at last, but no one came to help the shepherd boy.	E. Slow but steady wins the race.

IV)-Complete the conversation between Nick and Mai about British table manners with the sentences given (A-J). Practise the conversation with your partners.

- A. If you are a guest, it is polite to wait until your host starts eating or indicates you should do so. It shows consideration.
- B. When you have finished eating, and to let others know that you have, place your knife and fork together, with the prongs on the fork facing upwards, on your plate.
- C. Yeah, of course, Mai. First, we are expected to eat properly with cutlery, especially fork and knife.
- D. Right. Hold your knife with the handle in your palm and your fork in the other hand with the prongs pointing downwards.
- E. You may eat chicken and pizza with your fingers if you are at a barbecue; otherwise, always use a knife and fork.
- F. If you have a knife in one hand, it is wrong to have a fork in the other with the prongs pointed up.
- G. Yes, they are sandwiches, crisps, and fruit.
- H. Well, the fork is held in the left hand and the knife in the right.
- I. Always say thank you when you are served something at a party. And in a restaurant, it is normal to pay for your food by putting your money on the plate which the bill comes.
- J. Of course not. Rest the fork and knife on the plate between mouthfuls, or for a break for conversation.

Mai: Can you tell me a little bit about English table manners, Nick?

Nick: (22) \_\_\_\_\_

Mai: How can we use the fork and the knife in the correct way?

Nick: (23) \_\_\_\_\_

Mai: I see. But is there anything that we should not do?

Nick: (24) \_\_\_\_\_

Mai: Our teacher has already mentioned it in the English lesson.

Nick: (25) \_\_\_\_\_

Mai: Do we hold the knife and the fork all the time?

Nick: (26) \_\_\_\_\_

Mai: Are there any foods that you don't eat with a knife, fork or spoon?

Nick: (27) \_\_\_\_\_

Mai: And is there any that we eat with our fingers, Nick?

Nick: (28) \_\_\_\_\_

Mai: If we are invited to a party, when should we start eating?

Nick: (29) \_\_\_\_\_

Mai: How can we show that we finish eating?

Nick: (30) \_\_\_\_\_

Mai: Anything else? For example, say "thank you" or pay the bill?

Nick: (31) \_\_\_\_\_

Mai: Thank you so much. I think all of us should have good table manners at anywhere, in England or in Viet Nam.

Nick: You're welcome, Mai.

V)-Read this fairy tale, and choose the correct answer A., B. C or D for each gap.

### **The Little Match Girl**

(32) \_\_\_\_\_ New Year's Eve, a little girl was wandering the streets in bare feet, trying to (33) \_\_\_\_\_ matches.

Both her shoes got lost, (34) \_\_\_\_\_ she got very cold in the snow. She held her arms and legs close to her body, and lighted a match to warm her hands. She could see a warm stove in front of her. She lighted a second match, and could see through the wall of the house she would go to. On the table (35) \_\_\_\_\_ all kinds of delicious foods.

She lighted a third match, and saw that she was sitting (36) \_\_\_\_\_ a Christmas tree. (37) \_\_\_\_\_, she saw a shooting star, and her mother, who was dead. She lighted another, and saw a vision of her grandmother. She (38) \_\_\_\_\_ lighting matches to make her grandmother close, and then her grandmother took her and flew (39) \_\_\_\_\_ heaven.

The girl's dead body was found the next morning.

- |     |               |               |            |            |
|-----|---------------|---------------|------------|------------|
| 32. | A. In         | B. At         | C. On      | D. Until   |
| 33. | A. sell       | B. buy        | C. sold    | D. bought  |
| 34. | A. yet        | B. but        | C. or      | D. so      |
| 35. | A. is         | B. are        | C. was     | D. were    |
| 36. | A. on         | B. at         | C. under   | D. in      |
| 37. | A. Since then | B. Right then | C. Now     | D. After   |
| 38. | A. keep       | B. kept       | C. keeping | D. to keep |
| 39. | A. up to      | B. up         | C. through | D. on      |

VI)-Read the passage and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

### **Australian Customs**

Men usually shake hands firmly the first time they meet. Women may or may not shake hands. "How do you do", "Good morning" and "Good afternoon" are formal greetings. Usually students and young people just say "Hello" or "Hi". People often appreciate it if you add their name, for example "Hi. Linda".

Whenever you receive an invitation formally in a written note or informally by telephone, it is good to reply quickly and honestly. On a written invitation, "RSVP," means, "Please reply" by the date that is stated. It is usual to ring and tell your friend if you have to change your plans or if you are delayed.

When you are invited to join friends for an outing to a restaurant or the theatre you will usually be expected to pay for your own meal or tickets.

Don't be worried if you are not fluent in the English language. If an English speaker is speaking too fast, ask them to speak a little more slowly.

Some questions are not asked in Australia unless you know a person very well or unless you are related to them. Don't ask someone their age, especially an older person, and don't ask men or women how much money they earn. Questions about the cost of a person's house and the cost of the various things they own are considered impolite in Australia. If you would like to know the cost of something, ask the question in a general way. For example, you could say, "How much does the average house cost in Sydney?"

	T	F
40. Men usually expect women to shake hands the first time they meet.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
41. Young people usually use a friendly way in greetings.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
42. When you get an informal invitation by phone, you don't need to reply quickly.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
43. When you receive a written invitation with "RSVP", you only reply it if you can't go.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
44. When you are invited to eat out, you are usually expected to pay for your share.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
45. It is OK in Australia when you ask someone to speak a little more slowly.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
46. It is considered impolite to ask about other people's incomes.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
47. You can ask the cost of things in a general way.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

VII)-Read the articles about the two famous festivals in Viet Nam, and then do the tasks that follow.

### **Cow Racing Festival**

The purpose of Cow Racing Festival is to celebrate the last day of the year, according to the Khmer calendar. The festival takes place within the region of Seven Mountains, An Giang Province, from the 29<sup>th</sup> day of the 8th lunar month to the 2<sup>nd</sup> day of the 9<sup>th</sup> lunar month.

Before the competition, from several villages of An Giang Province, best pairs of cows chosen for joining the activity go under special treatment for months. They are well fed and traditionally taught. On the racing day, pairs of cows perform their skills on a rice field which must be really muddy and in a length of 120 meters.

When the race starts, with each pair of cows, the rider, holding a tow, will make them run as fast as possible by slashing. However, within a pair, the cows must maintain a same speed. The race is a circular track, including two laps. In the first round, pairs of cow are under control, while, in the second one, there is no holding back. The pairs which remain until the end of the event and manage to reach the finish

line before their competitors will be the winners. The rider leading their cows to the first position will be awarded the greatest honor — the bravest rider in the region.

### Elephant Racing Festival

To local people in Central Highlands, the elephant has become a close friend with humans as they help people in working, transporting, and traveling. To express the bond between human beings and this friendly creature, Elephant Racing Festival, one of the biggest festivals in Central Highlands, is held annually in the third lunar month.

As preparation for the festival, villagers feed their elephants with a wide range of food apart from grass, including corns, sugar canes, sweet potatoes, papayas, and bananas. Also, in order to preserve their strength, the elephants take a rest without hard work.

Attending the event, festival goers are in their most beautiful and colorful holiday clothes. On this day, elephants from several villages gather at Don Village. Each time, ten elephants will run at the same time for about one or two kilometers. Therefore, the track's ground should be large enough. The competition is guided by the sound of *tu va*, a kind of horn. The first elephant which reaches the appointed destination will receive a laurel wreath as a sign of victory, and it will enjoy the achievement excitedly with sugar canes and bananas from surrounding people.

**Task 1: Match a word in column A with its definition in column B, writing the answer in each blank.**

Answer	A	B
_____	48. tow (n)	A. a close connection
_____	49. lap (n)	B. a rope and chain tied to the vehicle
_____	50. bond (n)	C. an animal
_____	51. creature (n)	D. a circle of leaves which is worn on the head by the winners of a competition
_____	52. destination (n)	E. one journey around a race-track
_____	53. laurel wreath	F. the place where someone is going



**Task 2: Read the passages again, and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).**

	T	F
54. Both the festivals are of the ethnic minority groups.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
55. These are the races for the animals that are considered close friends to local people.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
56. For both festivals, the animals take part in the competitions in pairs.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
57. Before the competition, the chosen animals ate well fed.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
58. There are different rules for the two rounds in Cow Racing Festival.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
59. The elephants taking part in the competition have a rest without hard work before the event.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
60. The rider leading their animals to the first position will be awarded the greatest honor in both festivals.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
61. The two festivals are held in the same lunar month.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

VIII)-Read the passage about Saint Chu Dong Tu Festival, and do the tasks that follow.

### **Saint Chu Dong Tu Festival**

Saint Chu Dong Tu is one of the four immortal gods in Viet Nam. It is a popular religious festival celebrating Godfather Chu Dong Tu, who discovered culture, conquered marsh, and developed agriculture and trade in the Vietnamese society. The festival is a joyful occasion, including several events such as a procession, religious ceremonies, feasting, music and dance and children's games. The procession includes musical bands, and eight weapons for ornaments and big pots. They sit on tens of boats, rowing to the middle of the river, scooping water into the pots and coming back to bathe the statue. After the purifying ceremony, you will be treated with various forms of entertainment like wrestling, fighting with sticks, human chess, traditional and religious dances and *cheo* traditional music.

**Task 1: Match a word in column A with its definition in column B, writing the answer in each blank.**

Answer	A	B
_____	62. immortal (adj)	A. an area of soft wet land
_____	63. marsh (n)	B. living and lasting for ever
_____	64. joyful (adj)	C. a form of chess in which people take the place of pieces
_____	65. human chess	D. very happy

**Task 2: Read the passage again, and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).**

- |  | T                        | F                        |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 66. People in Viet Nam always commemorate Saint Chu Dong Tu throughout the history.                                    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 67. People worship Saint Chu Dong Tu to show their gratitude for what he did to the Vietnamese society in early times. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 68. There are many cultural and entertaining events during the festival.   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 69. We can enjoy the atmosphere of traditional music and dances before the opening ceremony.                           | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

IX)-Connect each pair of sentences, using the conjunction or conjunctive adverb given in brackets.

70. Lion dances are held when opening a new company, or commencing an activity. These dances are believed to bring good luck and prosperity and drive away evil. (because)

---



---



---

71. You come and visit a Chinese family. You should bear in mind not to give an odd number of presents. Odd numbers are considered unlucky in China. (if, because)

---



---



---

72. The weather in India is rather hot all year round. You shouldn't wear shorts or sleeveless shirts when visiting a pagoda. (but)

---

---

73. Lim Festival is the festival of “Quan Ho” singing. It is also space for various folk games. (moreover)

---

---

74. People believe that the first person who visits their home during Tet holiday may bring them welfare for the whole year. The person who sweeps the floor on the first three days of this festive occasion might sweep away the wealth. (however)

---

---

---

---

X)-Make sentences about folk dances of Apsara dance, using the words and phrases given. You can add some words and make changes.

75. Apsara dance/ a form/ Cambodian classical dance.

---

76. It/ known/ Cambodian Royal Ballet.

---

77. The Apsara performed/ a woman/ a traditional dress.

---

78. The dance/ use/ gestures/ tell myths/ or religious stories.

---

79. It/ have/ a soft movement/ loudly traditional Khmer music/ during its performance.

---

80. Apsara dance/ not require/ physical ability/ but/ it/ require/ smooth movement.

---

# UNIT 7: POLLUTION

## A. PHONETICS

I)-Write the words from the box in the correct part of the table, according to the stress pattern.

<i>scenic</i>	<i>economic</i>	<i>terrific</i>	<i>Arabic</i>	<i>kinetic</i>	<i>linguistic</i>
<i>sonic</i>	<i>supersonic</i>	<i>statistic</i>	<i>cosmetic</i>	<i>aerobic</i>	<i>symbolic</i>
<i>fantastic</i>	<i>systematic</i>	<i>phonetic</i>	<i>emphatic</i>	<i>sympathetic</i>	<i>automatic</i>
<i>historic</i>	<i>comic</i>	<i>heroic</i>	<i>specific</i>	<i>scientific</i>	<i>mechanic</i>
<i>republic</i>	<i>romantic</i>	<i>microscopic</i>	<i>magic</i>	<i>fabric</i>	<i>oceanic</i>
<i>arithmetic</i>	<i>traffic</i>	<i>elastic</i>	<i>ceramic</i>	<i>aquatic</i>	<i>geographic</i>
<i>energetic</i>	<i>botanical</i>	<i>classical</i>	<i>typical</i>	<i>logical</i>	<i>numerical</i>
<i>political</i>	<i>tropical</i>	<i>vertical</i>	<i>practical</i>	<i>critical</i>	<i>mythical</i>

<b>Oo</b>	<hr/> <hr/>
<b>Ooo</b>	<hr/> <hr/>
<b>oOo</b>	<hr/> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/>
<b>oOoo</b>	<hr/> <hr/>

ooOo

II)-Complete the sentences with the words in the box. Then practise saying them aloud.

*aquatic heroic historical specific medical psychological dramatic chemicals*

1. The Nhue River's water has turned black with the \_\_\_\_\_ discharged from factories.
2. The fascinating sky view offers us cultural and \_\_\_\_\_ values.
3. People from "cancer villages" should go for \_\_\_\_\_ examination.
4. Serious levels of water pollution poison \_\_\_\_\_ life.
5. Billboards should only be allowed to hang at roadside for a \_\_\_\_\_ period time.
6. At the higher levels, noise pollution may lead to physical and \_\_\_\_\_ damage.
7. The programme had a/an \_\_\_\_\_ effect on the environment.
8. The volunteers made a/an \_\_\_\_\_ fight against pollution of the beach.

## B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I)-Match each type of pollution with its definition, writing the answer in each blank.

Answer	Types of pollution	Definitions
_____	1. Air pollution	A. the increase of temperature caused by human activity
_____	2. Land pollution	B. the contamination of any body of water, such as lakes, groundwater, oceans, etc.
_____	3. Light pollution	C. the contamination of air by smoke and harmful gases
_____	4. Noise pollution	D. the release of unwanted radioactive material into the environment
_____	5. Thermal pollution	E. the brightening of the night sky preventing us from seeing stars by improper lighting of communities.
_____	6. Visual pollution	F. the destruction of the earth's surface caused by the misuse of resources and improper dumping of waste
_____	7. Water pollution	G. anything unattractive or visually damaging to the nearby landscape

_____ 8. Radioactive pollution	H. any loud sounds that are either harmful or annoying to humans and animals
--------------------------------	--

II)-Complete the sentences, using the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. The soil becomes \_\_\_\_\_ because of the use of so many pesticides and fertilizers. (contaminate)
2. \_\_\_\_\_ waste spills can contaminate groundwater. (industry)
3. In many developing countries, water pollution is usually a leading cause of \_\_\_\_\_. (die)
4. \_\_\_\_\_ elements have been found in both ground and underground water sources. (pollute)
5. Fish and many other animals are killed by \_\_\_\_\_ in their habitat. (pollute)
6. Astronomers are concerned about light pollution because they have \_\_\_\_\_ in viewing activities in the sky and outer space. (difficult)

III)-Rewrite the sentences, using the words in brackets. You can make some changes.

1. There are asthma, allergies and other respiratory illnesses when air pollution happens. **(leads to)**  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
2. Aquatic life suffers or dies because there is thermal pollution. **(because of)**  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
3. Water in the Cau River becomes brown and has terrible smell because the waste water is released from the paper mill in Thai Nguyen City. **(so)**  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
4. People use too much herbicide to treat weeds, so water in rivers, canals, lakes are extremely polluted and has bad effects on people’s health. **(because)**  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
5. Many fish in the river die due to the increased temperature of water. **(because)**  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

6. Because plastic bags take so long to decompose, nearly all of them still exist in the environment today. **(so)**

---

---

IV)-People are worried about the greenhouse effect. Makes sentences in Conditional sentences type 1 with “*If..., ...will...*”, using the cues given

the earth gets warmer



the sea gets warmer



the ice at the North and South Poles melts



the sea level rises



there are floods in many parts of the world



many people lose their homes

1. If the earth gets warmer, the sea will get warmer.
2. If the sea gets warmer,
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_

V)-Combine each pair of sentences, using conditional sentences type 1.

1. A person looks at the sky at night. He is not able to see the Milky Way by naked eye.

---

---

2. Noise pollution happens regularly. It causes stress or nuisance.

---

---

3. Water pollution gets more serious in the future. It affects the development of economy and society.

---

---

4. Australia has invested in water in Viet Nam with good results. Half of the population in the rural areas has access to fresh water.

---

---

5. You use compact light bulbs. You save a lot of energy.

---

---

6. We have more space. We plant more trees.

---

VI)-Answer the questions, using conditional sentences type 2.

1. What would you do if you had a garden of your own?

---

2. If you had one wish, what would it be?

---

3. What would you do if you won €1 million?

---

4. What would you do to make our school ground greener if you were the principal?

---

5. What would you do if you were the Earth Hour Goodwill Ambassador?

---

### C. SPEAKING

I)-Complete the conversation with the phrases in the table.

<i>to stop them</i>	<i>By the way</i>	<i>into the river</i>
<i>to do about it</i>		<i>That's terrible!</i>

Mai: You know, there's a factory outside our town that's pumping chemicals

(1)\_\_\_\_\_



Nick: How can they do that? Isn't that against the law?

Mai: Yes, it is. But a lot of companies ignore those laws.

Nick: (2)\_\_\_\_\_. What can we do now?

Mai: Well, one thing (3)\_\_\_\_\_ is to talk to the management.

Nick: What if that doesn't work?

Mai: Well, then another way (4)\_\_\_\_\_ is to get a TV station to run a story on it.

Nick: Yes! Companies hate bad publicity. (5)\_\_\_\_\_, what's the name of this company?

Mai: It's called Apex Industries.

Nick: Oh, no. It was in the news last month.

*Notes:*

- **ignore** (v) = to pay attention to somebody/ something (không để ý đến, lờ đi)

- **bad publicity** = notice that is harmful (tiếng xấu)

II)-Rearrange the sentences in order to make a meaningful conversation, writing the number (1-8) in each blank. The first (0) has been done for you.

0                    Mai:            Our group will give a presentation about visual pollution. It's new to me. Do you know what is it, Phong?

\_\_\_\_\_            A. Phong:    Yes, maybe. Because billboards, litter, or junkyards can also be considered visual pollution.

\_\_\_\_\_            B. Mai:            I hate seeing a man throw an empty cigarette package from a motorbike or a car. He should be given a fine.

\_\_\_\_\_            C. Mai:            Oh, I see. Can you give some examples of it, Phong?

\_\_\_\_\_            D. Phong:    That's right. There are rules, or regulations that apply punishment to anyone that makes the surroundings ugly. I dislike seeing too many billboards along the streets. How about you, Mai?

\_\_\_\_\_            E. Mai:            Can we see visual pollution when we walk along the streets?

\_\_\_\_\_            F. Phong:    Well, visual pollution is anything that makes our neighbourhood unattractive or unpleasant, Mai.

\_\_\_\_\_ G. Mai: All of us should try to protect the beautiful sight around us. We must have laws or regulations to protect out pretty landscape.

\_\_\_\_\_ H. Phong: Yeah, for example, skyscrapers or high buildings that block a natural view, graffiti or carving on trees or rocks.

#### D. READING

I)-Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Light pollution is not (1)\_\_\_\_\_ serious as water or air pollution. (2)\_\_\_\_\_, it is the type of pollution that (3)\_\_\_\_\_ more in cities than in rural areas. In the past, we could sit out at night and (4)\_\_\_\_\_ at glittering stars in the sky and light from objects in the out space. Nowadays, cities are covered with lights from buildings, streets, advertising displays, many of which direct the lights up into the sky and into many unwanted places. The real problem is that it is very (5)\_\_\_\_\_ to apply light to almost everything at night. Millions of tons of oil and coal (6)\_\_\_\_\_ to produce the power to light the sky. Eye strain, (7)\_\_\_\_\_ of vision and stress are what people may get from light pollution. (8)\_\_\_\_\_ light at night can harm our eyes and also harm the hormones that help us to see things properly.

- |    |              |             |              |                 |
|----|--------------|-------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. | A. more      | B. as       | C. much      | D. only         |
| 2. | A. Moreover  | B. However  | C. Therefore | D. Nevertheless |
| 3. | A. happen    | B. occur    | C. occurs    | D. is occurred  |
| 4. | A. watch     | B. see      | C. spend     | D. gaze         |
| 5. | A. waste     | B. wastes   | C. wasting   | D. wasteful     |
| 6. | A. used      | B. using    | C. is used   | D. are used     |
| 7. | A. use       | B. lost     | C. loss      | D. losing       |
| 8. | A. Very much | B. Too much | C. Too many  | D. So many      |

II)-Read the passage, and do the tasks that follow.

There are many causes that lead to water pollution. One main cause of this issue is waste water coming from many factories and then being directly pulled out into water bodies, especially into rivers or seas without any treatment because this is the most convenient way of disposing waste water. Industrial waste consists of some kind

of chemical substance such as sulphur, which is harmful for marine life. Lead is known as the main reason for cancer disease. Cancer has become a popular disease in several communes which is called “cancer villages. Another cause is the awareness of citizens, people always use water for many purposes and then they dump waste water or garbage directly into rivers, canal, and ponds and so on. In 2004, because of bird fly outbreak in Vietnam, people threw poultry to water body that made water highly polluted.

**Task 1: Match a word in column A with its definition in column B, writing the answer in each blank.**

Answer	A	B
_____	1. convenient (adj)	J. birds, like hens, ducks, geese... that are kept for eggs and meat.
_____	2. marine (adj)	K. knowledge
_____	3. awareness (n)	L. connected with the sea
_____	4. outbreak (n)	M. suitable or practical for a particular purpose
_____	5. poultry (n)	N. the sudden beginning of something unpleasant

**Task 2: Read the passage again, and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).**

	T	F
6. Waste water from many factories which is dumped into water bodies directly causes water pollution.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7. Dumping waste directly into water is the most convenient way of disposing waste water.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8. Sulphur is believed the main reason for cancer.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9. Cancer villages occurred in 2004.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10. Due to lack of awareness, people poisoned water with dead poultry when there was bird flu outbreak in 2004.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

III)-Read the passage, and do the tasks that follow.

### Space Pollution

The launch of Sputnik I and Yuri Gagarin, the first human being in space, marked the beginning of space exploration and the beginning of a new and unfamiliar type of pollution.

Satellites, solar panels, rocket bodies and fragments from space shuttles that are floating in space and are no longer functional are considered space debris. This pollution of man-made objects in space affects us here on Earth as well and will continue to affect us in future travel. In 1978, the Soviet Union Kosmos 954, which contained a nuclear power source, reentered over Canada and left debris over an area the size of Austria. In 1969, five Japanese sailors were injured by pieces of space debris that hit their ship. The largest piece, weighing one thousand pounds, landed in Australia in 1979.

Many solutions are being considered by scientists and engineers. However, the challenge to finding a solution lies within all of the nations which take part in the space exploration.

**Task 1: Match a word in column A with its definition in column B, writing the answer in each blank.**

Answer	A	B
_____	1. shuttle	A. broken pieces of something larger
_____	2. functional	B. made by people
_____	3. debris	C. a vehicle in which people travel into space and pack again
_____	4. man-made	D. a way of finding an answer to a problem
_____	5. solution	E. working; being used

**Task 2: Read the passages again, and answer the questions.**

6. What are some examples of space pollution?

---

---

7. What are the effects of space pollution?

---

---

8. What did Kosmos 954 cause to Canada?

---

9. Why were Japanese sailor injured in 1969?

---

10. Is it easy for all of the nations taking part in the space exploration to find solutions?

---

### E. WRITING

**Write a paragraph about noise pollution (definition, causes, effects, and solutions).**

1. Noise pollution/ any loud sounds/ either harmful or annoying/ humans and animals.

---

---

2. Generally/ noise/ produced/ household appliances/ big trucks/ vehicles and motorbikes/ on the road/ planes and helicopters flying over cities/ loud speakers, etc.

---

---

---

3. Noise pollution/ cause/ stress/ illnesses/ hearing loss/ sleep loss/ lost productivity.

---

---

4. Health effects/ noise/ include/ anxiety/ stress/ headaches/ irritability/ nervousness.

---

---

5. Noise-producing industries/ airports/ bus terminals/ should/ located/ far/ living places.

---

- 
6. The officials/ check/ misuse/ loudspeakers/ outdoor parties and discos/ as well as/ public announcement systems.
- 
- 

TEST (UNIT 7)

I)-Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- |                  |               |              |             |
|------------------|---------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. A. terrific   | B. Arabic     | C. statistic | D. cosmetic |
| 2. A. arithmetic | B. geographic | C. energetic | D. economic |
| 3. A. linguistic | B. classical  | C. phonetic  | D. romantic |
| 4. A. fantastic  | B. historic   | C. comic     | D. symbolic |
| 5. A. oceanic    | B. specific   | C. ceramic   | D. aquatic  |

II)-Complete the sentences, using the correct form of the words in brackets.

6. \_\_\_\_\_ habitats have been destroyed in recent years. (nature)
7. A number of cleaning products contain \_\_\_\_\_ chemicals. (harm)
8. Water samples collected at these villages were seriously \_\_\_\_\_ with bacteria. (contaminate)
9. People believe that the \_\_\_\_\_ water has brought cancer to the local residents.
10. Light pollution makes us \_\_\_\_\_ to see the stars in the sky. (able)
11. Noise is considered as \_\_\_\_\_ pollution. (environment)

III)-Fill in each blank with the correct preposition.

12. Thousands of people were exposed \_\_\_\_\_ radiation when the nuclear plant exploded.
13. Waste water from many factories which is dumped \_\_\_\_\_ water bodies directly causes water pollution.
14. Land pollution is responsible for damage done \_\_\_\_\_ natural habitat of animals.
15. Americans throw \_\_\_\_\_ twenty-eight and a half million tons of plastic in landfills every year.
16. Scientists have come up \_\_\_\_\_ new ways of saving energy.

IV)-People are worried about the effect of water pollution. Makes sentences in Conditional sentences type 1 with “If..., ...will...”, using the cues given.

people dump wastes and poisonous chemicals into water



tiny animals eat pollutants in polluted water



fish and shellfish eating tiny animals contain poison in their bodies



people who eat these fish et some diseases



they have to go to hospital



their family members take care of them

17. If

\_\_\_\_\_

18.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

19.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

20.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

21.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

V)-Circle the mistake in each sentences, and then correct it.

22. Long exposure to loud noise results permanent hearing loss.	_____
23. The misuse of resources and importer dumping of waste make land pollution.	_____

24.	The soil becomes contaminated because the use of so many pesticides and other farming chemicals.	_____
25.	Oil slicks from boats or ships pollute the sea, because many fish and sea-birds die.	_____
26.	In many developing countries, water pollution is usually a leading cause of death if people drink from polluted water resources.	_____
27.	We should plant trees in our neighbourhood so trees help cool the planet.	_____

VI)-Combine each pair of sentences, using the words/ phrases in brackets. You can make some changes.

28. We are unable to see the stars in the sky. Light pollution occurs. (makes)

\_\_\_\_\_

29. Glass panels, windows, lawns and roofs make light pollution worse. They reflect both artificial and sun light. (because)

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

30. All sounds are not noise. Noise is any sound that is unwanted and goes beyond its certain limit, for example, above 80 decibels. (because)

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

31. More and more noise is created by modern civilization. It has now become a major environmental pollutant, especially in urban areas. (so)

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

32. Contamination in the air happens. There is acid rain which damages soil, vegetation and aquatic life of the region. (causes)



- 
- 
33. Noise pollution is one of the major causes of stress and anxiety. People suffer from stress and anxiety. (because of)
- 
- 

VII)-Rearrange the sentences in order to make a meaningful conversation, writing the correct letter (A-H) in each blank. The conversation starts with number 0.

0            Mi:            Nick, last Sunday my mother and I went to the mall in the city center to buy some new clothes for our Tet holiday. The streets were so bright at night.

34. \_\_\_\_\_ A. Mi:            I see. Do you know any other example of light pollution?

35. \_\_\_\_\_ B. Mi:            Besides the waste, light pollution many affect human health and our sleep cycles.

36. \_\_\_\_\_ C. Mi:            Light pollution? Our teacher has just mentioned it in the lesson this morning. Why is too much light at night harmful?

37. \_\_\_\_\_ D. Mi:            And sometimes we also have extra or unnecessary lights around the house.

38. \_\_\_\_\_ E. Nick:            I enjoy Tet in Vietnam, Mi. But a lot of lights and posters along the streets may cause light pollution.

39. \_\_\_\_\_ F. Nick:            You're right, Mi. I think it is very wasteful because we use much more energy to light up the city or our home all day round.

40. \_\_\_\_\_ G. Nick:            Because it may prevent us from seeing the stars and other planets.

41. \_\_\_\_\_ H. Nick:            Yes, we can mention street lamps that shine in all directions, instead with a hood to point light downward the streets, or cities with lights all night long.

VIII)-Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Have a walk (42)\_\_\_\_\_ a beach, listen to the sound of the sea waves, and suddenly you see a lot of rubbish on the beach. Pollution takes away all the (43)\_\_\_\_\_ of our beaches. I feel really very annoyed (44)\_\_\_\_\_ I see

plastic bags lying on the sand, cigarette ends buried in the sand, and soda cans floating in the sea.

There are a lot of things that we can do. (45)\_\_\_\_\_ we see rubbish, we should do our part in the protecting the land (46)\_\_\_\_\_ picking it up and throwing it in dust bins. (47)\_\_\_\_\_, we can form some kind of organization that helps (48)\_\_\_\_\_ the beaches. If everyone does their part, the beaches will be a wonderful and beautiful place. We need to start now (49)\_\_\_\_\_ the beaches are damaged beyond repair.

- |     |                 |              |                 |                    |
|-----|-----------------|--------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| 42. | A. at           | B. in        | C. on           | D. over            |
| 43. | A. beauty       | B. beautiful | C. beautifully  | D. being beautiful |
| 44. | A. before       | B. after     | C. when         | D. while           |
| 45. | A. While        | B. If        | C. Unless       | D. Soon            |
| 46. | A. by           | B. with      | C. of           | D. in              |
| 47. | A. Nevertheless | B. Therefore | C. However      | D. Moreover        |
| 48. | A. cleaning up  | B. clean up  | C. cleaning off | D. clean off       |
| 49. | A. before       | B. after     | C. until        | D. when            |

IX)-Read the passage, and do the tasks that follow.

### **Bike Capital of the World**

Copenhagen has over 390 kilometers of bike lanes and is widely regarded as the bike capital of the world. The Danes are well-known for their love of cycling, and Copenhagen's network of bike lanes is studied by other cities.

Cyclists in Copenhagen are saving the city 90,000 tons of CO<sub>2</sub> emission annually. Every day, about 789,000 miles are cycled in Copenhagen. Thirty-six percent of the city's residents bike to school or work. The city is looking to increase that number to 50% by building more bike lanes, widening existing lanes, creating biking –only bridges over the city's waterways, providing more space for parking bikes, and improving safety along existing bike routes.

The city of Copenhagen clearly understands the value of biking-friendly cities. They are healthier, more environmentally-friendly, and allow for better quality of life.

**Task 1: Match a word in column A with its definition in column B, writing the answer in each blank.**

Answer	A	B
_____	50. regarded	A. once a year
_____	51. well-known	B. thought of in a particular way
_____	52. annually	C. how good or bad something is
_____	53. space	D. known by a lot of people; famous
_____	54. quality	E. an area that is empty or not used

**Task 2: Read the passages again, and answer the questions.**

55. Why is Copenhagen regarded as the bike capital of the world?

\_\_\_\_\_

56. What are the Danes well-known for?

\_\_\_\_\_

57. How many miles are cycled in Copenhagen every day?

\_\_\_\_\_

58. What is the city going to do?

\_\_\_\_\_

59. What are the benefits of biking-friendly cities?

\_\_\_\_\_

X)-Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

### Saving the Environment: One Home at a Time

Pollution can be seen not only throughout the world, but also in our own homes. It comes from household chemicals, the amount of water people use and the waste people produce and throw away. What can be done to stop this pollution? Surprisingly, a person can help save the environment by doing simple things.

First, we need to recycle, which allows products to be used over and over again. Recycling can also reduce the number of trees cut down to produce paper products. It takes very little effort. It is not hard to place plastic and glass bottles, aluminum cans and paper in a bin. Anyone can do it.

Second, we need to watch the amount of water used in the home. It can be conserved by taking short shower instead of baths, repairing leaky faucets, using the

dishwasher or washing machine only when fully loaded, or simply turning the faucet off while brushing your teeth.

Third, we need to reduce waste. We need to recycle whenever possible, but should also try to use this waste effectively. For example, grass clippings and food scraps can be made into compost for plants. The average person produces 4.3 pounds of waste every day, but we can reduce that amount by recycling and reusing.

If we do our part in our own homes, we can help keep the planet from becoming more polluted.

60. Pollution can be caused from the following sources except \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. house chemicals B. water from household  
C. wastes D. water in rivers
61. Recycling can help us \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. never cut down trees B. use products again and again  
C. place garbage bins easily D. produce more paper products
62. In order to save water, we can do all of the following things except \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. take short showers instead of baths  
B. repair leaky faucets  
C. fully use the washing machine  
D. turn the faucet off while brushing your teeth
63. Recycling helps to reduce waste because \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. plants need to develop  
B. a person can do it in his home  
C. waste can be recycled and reused  
D. an average man produces compost for plants
64. The word "It" in paragraph 2 refer to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. recycling B. the number C. cutting down D. effort

XI)-Fill in each blank with ONE suitable word.

The major cause of water pollution in Vietnam is the weakness in industrial wastewater management. Many factories (65)\_\_\_\_\_ fresh water to carry away waste (66)\_\_\_\_\_ their plants into canals, rivers, and lakes. Most of them do not have (67)\_\_\_\_\_ wastewater treatment system. Industrial waste water is directly discharged into canals, lakes, ponds, and rivers, causing serious (68)\_\_\_\_\_ of surface water. For example, (69)\_\_\_\_\_ 2008. Vedan factory, a sodium

glutamate plant, released their untreated industrial wastewater into the Thi Vai River and (70)\_\_\_\_\_ tons of fish and ducks in the river to die.

Another cause of water pollution in Vietnam is the lack of awareness among citizens. Every day people generate a lot of (71)\_\_\_\_\_, and they throw it directly into canals, rivers, and ponds. They (72)\_\_\_\_\_ water from these sources to do their laundry, wash dishes, and bathe, and then they throw the dirty water that contain detergent and shampoo directly into them.

XII)-Based on the context, make conditional sentences type 2 from the clues.

73. My home hasn't installed a solar water heater. If/ my home/ install/ a solar water heater/ we/ save a lot of energy.

\_\_\_\_\_

74. Not all households in Viet Nam turn off lights during the Earth Hour. If/ all households/ Viet Nam/ turn off lights/ the Earth Hour/ we/ save enough electricity/ develop our rural areas.

\_\_\_\_\_

75. Some students in our school still throw litter on the school ground. If/ students/ our school/ not throw litter/ the school ground/ our campus/ look/ greener/ fresher.

\_\_\_\_\_

76. People use aluminum cans instead of glass bottles. If/ people/ use/ glass bottles/ they/ use/ again and again.

\_\_\_\_\_

77. Our school ground is large but we don't have a wind turbine. If/ we/ install/ a wind turbine/ our school/ become/ more eco-friendly.

\_\_\_\_\_

78. People don't use organic fertilizers. If/ people/ use/ organic fertilizers/ they/ prevent/ land pollution.

\_\_\_\_\_

---

79. A large number of people ride their motorbikes to work. If/ people/ ride/ bikes/  
they/ keep/ air/ less polluted.

---

---

80. That factory doesn't have a wastewater treatment system. If/ that factory/ have/  
wastewater treatment system/ river/ not become/ so polluted.

---

---

# UNIT 8: ENGLISH SPEAKING COUNTRIES

## A. PHONETICS

Write the words from the box in the correct part of the table, according to the stress pattern.

<i>examinee</i>	<i>interviewee</i>	<i>trainee</i>	<i>absence</i>	<i>devotee</i>
<i>committee</i>	<i>coffee</i>	<i>nominee</i>	<i>referee</i>	<i>trustee</i>
<i>refugee</i>	<i>expellee</i>	<i>addressee</i>	<i>jubilee</i>	<i>guarantee</i>
<i>divorce</i>	<i>payee</i>	<i>Sudanese</i>	<i>Burmese</i>	<i>Lebanese</i>
<i>Maltese</i>	<i>Nepalese</i>	<i>Congolese</i>	<i>Japanese</i>	<i>Vietnamese</i>
<i>Chinese</i>	<i>Senegalese</i>	<i>Togolese</i>	<i>Viennese</i>	<i>Annamese</i>

<b>Oo</b>	_____
<b>oO</b>	_____
<b>Ooo</b>	_____
<b>oOo</b>	_____
<b>ooO</b>	_____ _____ _____ _____
<b>oooO</b>	_____

## B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

1)-Fill in each blank of the passage with the words in the box.

*a snack    open    gardens    start    stay    go to work    close    finish*

## Life in Britain

Homes: Most British people live in houses, not flats. Most houses have (1)\_\_\_\_\_.

Daily life: Most office workers (2)\_\_\_\_\_ at about nine o'clock in the morning and finish at about five or six in the evening. People don't go home for lunch. People usually eat a big meal in the evening – they just have (3)\_\_\_\_\_ at lunchtime.

School life: Children start school at about nine o'clock and (4)\_\_\_\_\_ at about half past three. Most children have lunch at school. Children (5)\_\_\_\_\_ school when they are four or five years old and leave when they are sixteen or eighteen.

Shops and restaurants: Shop (6)\_\_\_\_\_ at about nine o'clock in the morning and (7)\_\_\_\_\_ at about ten in the evening. Normally, they don't close for lunch. Most shops open on Sunday, too. Many supermarkets (8)\_\_\_\_\_ open twenty-four hours, but most pubs and restaurants close at about eleven o'clock in the evening.

II)-Fill in each blank in the following passage with ONE suitable word.

English is the (1)\_\_\_\_\_ language of the Philippines. English-medium education (2)\_\_\_\_\_ in the Philippines in 1901 after arrival of some 540 US teachers. English was also chosen for newspaper and magazines, the media, and literary writing.

The latest result from a recent survey suggest that about 65 percent of the (3)\_\_\_\_\_ of the Philippines has the (4)\_\_\_\_\_ to understand spoken and (5)\_\_\_\_\_ English, with 48 percent stating that they can write standard English.

The economy is based on English, and successful workers and managers are fluent (6)\_\_\_\_\_ English. (7)\_\_\_\_\_, many schools know that their (8)\_\_\_\_\_ must be fluent in English to be successful.

III)-Complete the sentences with the appropriate present tense of the verbs in brackets.

1. Canada \_\_\_\_\_ made up of 10 provinces and 3 territories. (be)
2. Australia \_\_\_\_\_ a range of different landscapes, including urban areas, mountain ranges, deserts and rain forests. (have)
3. Annually, the National Eisteddfod festival of Wales \_\_\_\_\_ place for eight days at the start of August. (take)



4. The Statue of Liberty \_\_\_\_\_ over 12 million immigrants entering the USA through New York Harbor since 1900. (welcome)
5. Each of the 50 states \_\_\_\_\_ an official state flower so far. (adopt)
6. Since 1965, the maple tree with the leaves \_\_\_\_\_ the most well-known Canadian symbol. (become)
7. At present, the National Cherry Blossom Festival \_\_\_\_\_ in Washington. D.C. to celebrate spring's arrival. (occur)
8. Maori \_\_\_\_\_ recognized as an official language of New Zealand since the Maori Language Act of 1987. (be)

### C. SPEAKING

Read the interesting facts about Wales, and complete the conversation. Practise it with your partner.

#### Wales - Interesting facts

- The country of Wales is a part of the United Kingdom and the island of Great Britain.
- English and Welsh are the two official languages of Wales. Welsh is a Celtic based language that is now spoken by over 20% of the population.
- 42% of the South and West Wales coastline is considered "Heritage Coast".
- The country of Wales is said to contain more castles per square mile than any other country in the world.
- Wales is often called "The Land of Song".
- The country is well-known for its harpist, male choirs, and solo artists.
- Although football (soccer) is the more popular sport in Northern Wales, Rugby Union is seen as national sport and is passionately played by most of the country.

A: My group is going to give the presentation about Wales, and I have just download a lot of interesting facts of that country.

B: Really? Is English the only official language there?

A: No, (1) \_\_\_\_\_

B: Does Wales have any coastline?

A: Yes, and (2) \_\_\_\_\_

B: Wales is not as famous for football as England, so what is the most popular sport there?

A: (3) \_\_\_\_\_

B: Scotland is very well-known for ancient castles. How about Wales?

A: Well, (4) \_\_\_\_\_

B: It sounds interesting. Are Welsh people fond of music?

A: Sure, (5) \_\_\_\_\_

B: Why?

A: (6) \_\_\_\_\_

B: Awesome. I think your group's presentation will be very interesting.

#### **D. READING**

I)-Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

##### **Maple Tree**

Tree have (1)\_\_\_\_\_ a meaningful role in the (2)\_\_\_\_\_ development of Canada and continue to be of commercial, environmental and aesthetic importance to all Canadians. Maples contribute valuable wood products, keep the maple sugar (3)\_\_\_\_\_ alive and help to beautify the landscape.

Since 1965 the maple leaf (4)\_\_\_\_\_ the most important feature of the National Flag of Canada and the maple tree with the leaves has become the most well-known Canadian (5)\_\_\_\_\_, nationally and internationally. Maple leaf pins and badges are proudly (6)\_\_\_\_\_ by Canadians abroad, and are recognized around the world. (7)\_\_\_\_\_ the maple leaf is closely associated with Canada, the maple tree was never officially recognized (8)\_\_\_\_\_ Canada's emblem until 1996.

- |    |             |               |               |                 |
|----|-------------|---------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. | A. taken    | B. given      | C. done       | D. played       |
| 2. | A. history  | B. historical | C. historic   | D. historian    |
| 3. | A. industry | B. industries | C. industrial | D. industrially |
| 4. | A. was      | B. have been  | C. has been   | D. is           |
| 5. | A. sign     | B. symbol     | C. tree       | D. leaf         |

- |    |            |         |         |               |
|----|------------|---------|---------|---------------|
| 6. | A. wear    | B. wore | C. worn | D. to be worn |
| 7. | A. Because | B. So   | C. But  | D. Although   |
| 8. | A. of      | B. with | C. as   | D. for        |

II)-Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

### Gherkin

The Gherkin is one of several modern buildings that have been built over the years in a historic area of London. The (1)\_\_\_\_\_ skyscraper was built in 2004, and its unique, and energy-efficient design has won the Gherkin many (2)\_\_\_\_\_.

The cigar-shaped structure has a steel frame (3)\_\_\_\_\_ circular floor planes and a glass facade with diamond-shaped panels. The building's energy-saving (4)\_\_\_\_\_ allows the air to flow up through spiraling wells. The top of the tower, (5)\_\_\_\_\_ visitors find an open hall covered by a glass conical dome, is even more spectacular. From here you have great (6)\_\_\_\_\_ over the city.

- |    |               |               |               |                 |
|----|---------------|---------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. | A. 41 stories | B. 41-stories | C. 41-story   | D. story-41     |
| 2. | A. awards     | B. rewards    | C. stories    | D. achievements |
| 3. | A. of         | B. with       | C. at         | D. in           |
| 4. | A. machine    | B. machines   | C. system     | D. systems      |
| 5. | A. where      | B. at where   | C. from where | D. there        |
| 6. | A. sights     | B. scenes     | C. signs      | D. views        |

III)-Read the passage and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

### The Kiwi

The kiwi lives only in New Zealand. It is a very strange bird because it cannot fly. The kiwi is the same size as a chicken. It has no wings or tail. It does not have any feathers like other birds.

A kiwi likes a lot of trees around it. It sleeps during the day because the sunlight hurts its eyes. It can smell things with its nose. It is the only bird in the world that can smell things. The kiwi's eggs are very big.

There are only a few kiwis in New Zealand now. New Zealanders want their kiwis to live. There is a picture of a kiwi on New Zealand money. People from New Zealand are sometimes called kiwis.

	T	F
11. Kiwis live in Australia and New Zealand.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12. A kiwi has a tail but no wings	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
13. It sleeps during the day because light hurts its eyes.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
14. People in New Zealand do not want all the kiwis to die.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
15. The kiwi is a strange New Zealand bird.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

IV)-Choose the item among A, B, C or D that best answers the question about the passage.

### **The Hopi of Arizona**

The Hopi live in the northwestern part of Arizona in the United States. With modern things all around them, the Hopi keep their traditions.

There are about ten thousand Hopi and they live in twelve villages in the desert. The weather is very hot in the summer, but in winter it freezes. The wind blows hard. Farming is difficult. Corn is the Hopi's main food, but they plant vegetables, too. They raise sheep, goats, and cattle. They also eat hamburgers, ice cream and drink soft drinks. They live in traditional stone houses, but many of them have telephones, radios, and television. They have horses, but they have trucks too.

Kachinas are an important part of the Hopi religion. Kachinas are spirits of dead people, of rocks, plants, and animals, and of the stars. Men dress as kachinas and do religious dances. People also make wooden kachinas. No two wooden kachinas are ever alike.

The children attend school, and they also learn the Hopi language, dances and stories. The Hopi want a comfortable, modern life, but they don't want to lose their traditions.

1. The Hopi \_\_\_\_\_.

A. want modern things instead of traditional ones

- B. want traditional things instead of modern ones
  - C. don't want to remember their traditions
  - D. want both modern and traditional things
2. Winters in this part of Arizona are \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. hot                      B. warm                      C. cool                      D. cold
  3. The main Hopi food is \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. corn                      B. hamburgers                      C. beef                      D. vegetables
  4. Kachinas are \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. men                      B. something to eat                      C. animals                      D. spirits
  5. The Hopi don't want to \_\_\_\_\_ their traditions.  
 A. lose                      B. hit                      C. remember                      D. learn
  6. The main idea of the passage is \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. the Hopi raise crops and animals in the Arizona desert  
 B. kachinas are spirits of the things round the Hopi  
 C. the Hopi keep their traditions even with modern life around them  
 D. the Hopi want a comfortable, modern life

V)-Read the text carefully, and then do the tasks that follow.

### **Multicultural Britain**

1. Britain has always been a mixed society. In the distant past, Celts, Romans, Saxons, Vikings and Normans all settled in Britain. During the past 150 years, people from Ireland, the former British colonies and the European Union have also come to Britain.
2. In the 1840s, there was a terrible famine in Ireland. A million people died and a million more left Ireland, and never returned. Most went to the USA, but many came to Britain.
3. In the 1950s and 1960s, the British government invited people from Britain's former colonies to live and work in Britain. The majority was from the West Indies, Pakistan, India and Hong Kong.
4. People from countries in the European Union are free to travel, live, and work in any other EU country. Recently, a lot of people have arrived from Central and Eastern Europe.

5. There are thousands of Indian and Chinese restaurants in the UK. Immigrants from the West Indies started the Notting Hill Carnival in 1965. It is now the biggest street festival in Europe. There are lot of Irish pubs in Britain and Irish folk music in popular.

**Task 1: Match the headings (A-E) with the paragraphs (1-5) of the text.**

- ☐ A. The European Union
- ☐ B. Ireland
- ☐ C. Introduction
- ☐ D. The former colonies
- ☐ E. How have immigrants influenced British life?

**Task 2: Match the highlighted words in the text with their meanings.**

- |                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| _____ 6. settled     | A. countries which another country controls    |
| _____ 7. colonies    | B. most  |
| _____ 8. famine      | C. came and lived                              |
| _____ 9. majority    | D. not long ago                                |
| _____ 10. recently   | E. a time when there is very little food       |
| _____ 11. immigrants | F. people who come and live in another country |

**Task 3: Are the sentences true or false?**

- |   | T                        | F                        |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 12. Immigration into Britain started in the 19 <sup>th</sup> century          | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 13. People left Ireland in the 1840s because there wasn't enough food to eat. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 14. Many Irish people left Ireland and returned later.                        | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 15. The West Indies, India, and Pakistan are former British colonies.         | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 16. In the 1950s and 1960s, the British government tried to stop immigration. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

17. In the last few years, a lot of people have arrived from southern Europe.



VI)-Read the passage carefully, and then answer the question below.

### Easy English

English is an important global language, but that doesn't mean it is easy to learn. Many experts have tried to make English easier to learn, but they weren't always successful.

In 1930, Professor CK Ogden of Cambridge University invented Basic English. It had only 850 words (and just eighteen verbs) and Ogden said most people could learn it in just thirty hours. The problem was that people who learned Basic English could write and say simple messages, but they couldn't understand the answers in 'real' English! It was also impossible to explain a word if it wasn't in the Basic English word list.

RE Zachrisson, a university professor in Sweden, decided that the biggest problem for learners of English was spelling, so he invented a language called Anglic. Anglic was similar to English, but with much simpler spelling. 'Father' became 'faadher', 'new' became 'nue' and 'years' became 'yeerz'. Unfortunately, for some students of English, Anglic never became popular.

Even easier is the language which ships' captains use: it is called 'Seaspeak'. Seaspeak uses a few simple phrases for every possible situation. In Seaspeak, for example, you don't say, 'I didn't understand, can you repeat that?' it is just, "Say again." No more grammar!

In the age of international communication through the Internet, a new form of English might appear. A large number of the world's e-mail are in English and include examples of 'NetLingo' like OIC (Oh, I see) and TTYL (Talk to you later).

1. What is the role of English?

---

2. When did Professor Ogden invent Basic English? How many words did it have?

---

3. Why did Professor Zachrisson invent Anglic? What happened to it?

---

4. What is the feature of Seaspeak?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. What has appeared in the age of international communication through the Internet?  
\_\_\_\_\_

VII)-Read the passage and do the tasks that follow.

### The Maori of New Zealand

The Maori arrived in New Zealand from other Polynesian islands over a thousand years ago. They were the first people to live there. They made beautiful wooden buildings with pictures cut into the wood. There are about 280,000 Maori today. Maori have brown skin, dark brown eyes, and wavy black hair.

In 1840, they agreed to become a British colony, and they learned European ways quickly. Today there are Maori in all kinds of jobs. They attend schools and universities and become lawyers and scientists. There are Maori in the government. Most of them live like the white New Zealanders.

However, the Maori do not forget their traditions. Children learn the language, music, and old stories. They have yearly competitions in speaking, dancing, and singing. The Maori live a comfortable, modern life, but they keep their traditions by passing them to their children.

**Task 1: Read the passage, and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).**

	T	F
1. The Maori are Polynesians.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2. New Zealand is an island country.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3. The Maori look like the Chinese.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4. The Maori live only by hunting and fishing.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5. The Maori like music.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**Task 2: Read the passage again, and write short answers to the questions.**

6. Where did the Maori come from?



---

7. How many Maori are there?

---

8. What do the Maori look like?

---

9. How do most Maori live today?

---

10. What do they do at their yearly competitions?

---

VIII)-Read the passage and do the tasks that follow.

### **The Sydney Opera House**

The Sydney Opera House is built on Bennelong Point, in Sydney Harbour, close to the Sydney Harbour Bridge. The first known concert on Bennelong Point was held in March 1791. Public pressure to build a suitable concert facility in Sydney became greater in the 1940s. In 1955, the New South Wales government announced an international competition for the design of “an opera house”. Danish architect Jørn Utzon’s entry was selected as the winning design. His design was for a complex with two theatres side by side on a large podium. This was covered by interlocking concrete shells, which acted as both wall and roof. A third smaller shell set apart from the others was to cover the restaurant.

The construction of the Opera House was sometimes difficult and controversial with Jørn Utzon resigning from the project in 1966. However, the Opera House was officially opened by Queen Elizabeth II on 20 October 1973. The Sydney Opera House became a UNESCO World Heritage Site in 2007.

**Task 1: Match the underlined words in the text with their meanings, and write each answer in the blank.**

- |                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| _____ 1. entry (n)          | A. joined together, especially by one part fitting into another |
| _____ 2. podium (n)         | B. causing public discussion and disagreement                   |
| _____ 3. interlocking (adj) | C. a thing that is entered for a competition                    |

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. controversial (adj) D. a platform

**Task 2: Read the passage, and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F)**

	T	F
5. It is a short distance between Sydney Opera House and the Sydney Harbour Bridge.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6. The site for the Sydney Opera House had never been used for concert before the modern construction.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7. The New South Wales government had the plan to build the Sydney Opera House because of public pressure.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8. Architects from any countries in the world could send their entries to the competition.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9. Interlocking concrete shells have acted as the walls and roofs of the two theaters.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10. The third shell was built for a restaurant.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
11. Jørn Utzon had no difficulty in directing the construction.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12. The Sydney Opera House became a UNESCO World Heritage Site when the Opera had been in operation for 20 years.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

## E. WRITING

Read the schedule for the one-day sightseeing tour to London, then write the statements describing the schedule for your visit. Use the words of sequence like *first, second, then, after that, next, ... finally*. You can start with:

7. 9.00 am: meet your guide on board your air-conditioned coach. Relax as you travel around central London to see the sights.

0. *This is the schedule for my one-day sightseeing tour to London. First, at 9 o'clock in the morning, I meet my guide on board my air-conditioned coach, and relax as I travel around London to see the sights ...*

1. 9.30 am: pass through Parliament Square, seeing the Houses of Parliament and the Big Ben clock.

---

---

2. 10.00 am: then travel past Westminster Abbey where Prince William married Kate Middleton in a royal wedding ceremony

---

---

3. 10.30 am: admire government building at Whitehall and Downing Street, and then see all the noise and activity that surrounds Nelson's Column at Trafalgar Square.

---

---

4. 11.15 am: watch the Changing of the Guard ceremony at Buckingham Palace.

---

---

5. 12.00 pm: rest and refuel with a large lunch (own expense)

---

---

6. 1.30 pm: continue your day of sightseeing with a visit to the City of London, an area just east of the city center where many of London's banks can be found.

---

---

7. 2.30pm: see other iconic London attractions such as St Paul's Cathedral and Mansion House. Look out for the sights as your guide explains their history.

---

---

8. 3.15 pm: continue to the Tower of London, and go inside to explore at your leisure. End your tour at 5 pm.

---

---

TEST (UNIT 8)

1)-Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

1.    A. coffee                      B. Chinese                      C. payee                      D. trainee

- |    |             |              |                |              |
|----|-------------|--------------|----------------|--------------|
| 2. | A. referee  | B. guarantee | C. Japanese    | D. jubilee   |
| 3. | A. refugee  | B. committee | C. absence     | D. Taiwanese |
| 4. | A. Viennese | B. Chinese   | C. Burmese     | D. Maltese   |
| 5. | A. engineer | B. volunteer | C. mountaineer | D. reindeer  |

II)-Do the quiz and choose the correct answers.

6. Another name for Wales is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Saxon                      B. Celtic                      C. Cymru                      D. Galle
7. You can see \_\_\_\_\_ on the Canadian national flag.  
A. the maple                      B. the red leaf                      C. the rose                      D. the oak tree leaf
8. In 1893, \_\_\_\_\_ became the first country in the world to give all women the right to vote.  
A. Canada                      B. New Zealand                      C. America                      D. Singapore
9. \_\_\_\_\_ has a unique culture with traditions such as bagpipes, kilts and highland dancing.  
A. England                      B. Wales                      C. Scotland                      D. Northern Ireland
10. The name "Australia" comes from the Latin word "australis", meaning \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. northern                      B. southern                      C. eastern                      D. western
11. The tallest mountain the US is Mt McKinley, located in the state of \_\_\_\_\_. It reaches 20,320 feet (6,194 m) above the sea level.  
A. Alaska                      B. California                      C. Florida                      D. Washington
12. The Lord of the Rings movies were filmed in \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. England                      B. Australia                      C. Canada                      D. New Zealand
13. Scotland only shares a border with \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Wales                      B. Northern Ireland                      C. England                      D. Britain
14. The name Canada comes from the word "kanata" which means "settlement" or "\_\_\_\_\_ " in the language of the St Lawrence Iroquoians.  
A. country                      B. village                      C. town                      D. nation

15. The world's largest reef system, the Great Barrier Reef, is found off the north-eastern coast of \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. Canada      B. America      C. New Zealand      D. Australia

III)-Fill in each blank with the correct word from the box.

quality	sincere	diverse	native	unique
wealthy	resources	accents	official	symbol

16. English and Welsh are the two \_\_\_\_\_ languages of Wales.  
17. Canada is rich in \_\_\_\_\_ such as zinc, nickel, lead and gold.  
18. Australia is home to a variety of \_\_\_\_\_ animals, including the koala, kangaroo, emu, kookaburra and platypus.  
19. Australia is a relatively \_\_\_\_\_ country with a high life expectancy.  
20. The US is a \_\_\_\_\_ country with a multicultural society.  
21. In Canada, the handshake should be firm and accompanied by direct eye contact and a \_\_\_\_\_ smile.  
22. In Quebec, if you give wine, make sure it is of the highest \_\_\_\_\_ you can afford.  
23. The American bald eagle was chosen as the national bird \_\_\_\_\_ of the United States in 1782.  
24. Australian \_\_\_\_\_ do not vary from area to area like in many other countries.  
25. In Singapore, the number of \_\_\_\_\_ speakers of English is still rising.

IV)-Fill in each blank of the passage with the words in the box.

allows	gives	takes	wheel	iconic	close	high	symbol
--------	-------	-------	-------	--------	-------	------	--------

### The London Eye

At 135 metres, the London Eye is the world's tallest observation (26)\_\_\_\_\_. It has become the modern (27)\_\_\_\_\_ representing the capital of England and a global icon.

The gradual rotation in one of the 32 high-tech glass capsules (28)\_\_\_\_\_ about 30 minutes and (29)\_\_\_\_\_ you a view of London. Within each capsule, the

interactive guide (30)\_\_\_\_\_ you to explore the capital's (31)\_\_\_\_\_ landmarks in several languages.

An experience on the London Eye will lift you (32)\_\_\_\_\_ enough to see up to 40 kilometres on a clear day and keep you (33)\_\_\_\_\_ enough to see the spectacular details of the city beneath you.

V)-Complete the sentences with the appropriate present tense of the verbs in brackets.

34. In Canada, New Year's Day \_\_\_\_\_ a long tradition of celebration. (have)
35. First names \_\_\_\_\_ used more frequently in Australia than in other countries. (be)
36. Recently, many places in New Zealand \_\_\_\_\_ called with two names – one English, one Maori. (be)
37. Maori people \_\_\_\_\_ the hongi – touching noses – to greet people they \_\_\_\_\_ safe and familiar with. (use-feel)
38. Since its beginning more than a century ago, the slouch hat \_\_\_\_\_ one of the most distinctive items of Australian clothing. (become)
39. For over 130 years, Akubra hats \_\_\_\_\_ its legendary stories in Australia. (make)
40. Aberdeen in Scotland \_\_\_\_\_ an important centre for the oil industry since the finding of oil in the North Sea. (become)
41. Canada \_\_\_\_\_ the longest land border in the world with the United States. (share)
42. Ireland \_\_\_\_\_ the Eurovision Song Contest seven times. (win)
43. In Canada you should maintain eye contact while you \_\_\_\_\_ lands. (shake)

VI)-Rearrange the sentences to make a conversation by writing the correct letter (A-H) in each blank. The conversation starts with number 0.

0                    Mai: Nick, I know that Uncle Sam is a popular symbol of the United States, but I don't know its origin. Do you know that?

44. \_\_\_\_\_ A. Nick: That's right, Mai. And the town of Troy, New York is called "The Home of Uncle Sam".

45. \_\_\_\_\_ B. Nick: Well, the soldiers considered the barrels of meat as "Uncle Sam's". The local newspaper told the story and Uncle Sam had widespread acceptance as the nickname for the US government.

46. \_\_\_\_\_ C. Mai: Thank you so much, Nick. I wish I had a trip to New York.
47. \_\_\_\_\_ D. Mai: A meat supplier? How did the nick name Uncle Sam start, Nick?
48. \_\_\_\_\_ E. Nick: The cartoonist Thomas Nast gave the white beard and stars-and-stripes suit to the image of Uncle Sam in the 1870s.
49. \_\_\_\_\_ F. Nick: Yes, it's also the nickname of the USA, Mai. The name is lined to Samuel Wilson, a meat supplier from Troy, New Work during the war of 1812.
50. \_\_\_\_\_ G. Mai: I think since that time it has been considered America's national symbol.
51. \_\_\_\_\_ H. Mai: The story was simple. And who painted the image of Uncle Sam?

VII)-Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

### London's Tower Bridge

London's Tower Bridge is one of the most famous (52)\_\_\_\_\_ in the world. The bridge, designed by the architect Horace Jones together with John Wolfe Barry, was finally completed in 1894. It (53)\_\_\_\_\_ 11,000 tons of steel to build the framework of the 265-meter-long bridge. Over time, the bridge has become one of London's most famous (54)\_\_\_\_\_.

(55)\_\_\_\_\_ photographs of the Tower Bridge is a favourite London tourist activity, but you can also go inside the bridge, where you'll have a magnificent view over London from the walkway (56)\_\_\_\_\_ the two bridge towers.

In 2014, glass floors were installed in the walkways, giving visitors another, unusual view from the bridge. The long glass floors, more than 40 meters above the river, allow you to (57)\_\_\_\_\_ the traffic over the Tower Bridge from above. It is particularly (58)\_\_\_\_\_ to see the bridge (59)\_\_\_\_\_ and close below your feet.

- |                |            |               |              |
|----------------|------------|---------------|--------------|
| 52. A. bridge  | B. bridges | C. tower      | D. towers    |
| 53. A. brought | B. built   | C. took       | D. gave      |
| 54. A. symbols | B. views   | C. landscapes | D. scenes    |
| 55. A. To take | B. Take    | C. Taking     | D. To taking |
| 56. A. at      | B. between | C. on         | D. in        |

57. A. watch                  B. follow                  C. record                  D. consider
58. A. fascinate                B. fascination             C. fascinated             D. fascinating
59. A. open                      B. to open                C. opened                D. be opened

VIII)-Choose the item among A, B, C or D that best answer the question about the passage.

# Scotland: The Land of Legends

If we travel all over Scotland, we can see that it consists of three main parts: Lowlands, Uplands and Highlands with their Grampian Mountains, where the tallest mountain peak, Ben Nevis, is located.

You are sure to enjoy the beauty of the Scottish varied landscape: the hills covered with purple heather, its beautiful lakes (here they are called lochs), its green and narrow valleys.

The biggest and the most beautiful lake in Scotland is Loch Lomond, but the most famous one is Loch Ness with its mysterious monster Nessie. Nessie sometimes appears to scare the tourist but only in fine weather!

But what can be more curious and attractive for tourist than a man in the kilt, playing the bagpipes? The Celts of Scotland made the chequered pattern of tartan – the national dress of the country. The earliest Scots formed themselves into clans (family groups) and the tartan became a symbol of the sense of kinship. There are about 300 different clans in Scotland, and each has its own colour and pattern of tartan together with the motto.

Scotland is a land of many famous people: writer and poets, scientist and philosophers, such as Robert Burns, Arthur Conan Doyle, Alexander Graham Bell, or Alexander Fleming.

60. The tallest mountain peak, Ben Nevis, is located in \_\_\_\_\_.  
E. Lowlands      F. Uplands      G. Highlands      H. England
61. Scotland has beautiful landscape with all of the following except \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. the hills      B. the lakes      C. the valleys      D. the beaches
62. All of the following are true about Loch Ness except \_\_\_\_\_.  
E. it is the most famous lake in Scotland  
F. it is the biggest and the most beautiful lake in Scotland  
G. its mysterious monster Nessie makes the lake famous



- H. Nessie sometimes appears to scare the tourists
63. In early times, each family groups was different from each other in \_\_\_\_\_.  
 E. its own colour and pattern of tartan together with the motto  
 F. the chequered pattern of tartan and the sense of kinship  
 G. its green and narrow valley where they lived  
 H. its area and population and beautiful landscape
64. The word “kinship” in paragraph 4 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. the family group and its symbol  
 B. the own colour and pattern of tartan  
 C. the relationship between clan members  
 D. the national dress of the country

IX)- Read the passage and do the tasks that follow.

### Stonehenge

Stonehenge stands in a grassy field in the Wiltshire countryside. It is one of the most popular sights in England.

Stonehenge is a prehistoric, mysterious circle of upright stones in southern England. Construction on the great monument began 5,000 years ago.

Stonehenge draw over 800,000 visitors per year. Stonehenge was built as a spectacular place of worship. A visit to Stonehenge begins from Visitor’s Centre to the monument. There is a fee for parking as well as for admission, which includes an optional audio guide. For conversation reasons, visitors are no longer allowed to approach the stones except on certain occasions or on a special tour.

**Task 1: Match the underlined words in the text with their meanings, and write each answer in the blank.**

- |                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| _____ 65. prehistoric (adj) | A. very interesting or attractive              |
| _____ 66. upright (adj)     | B. attract somebody                            |
| _____ 67. draw (v)          | C. vertical                                    |
| _____ 68. spectacular (adj) | D. come near                                   |
| _____ 69. approach (v)      | E. of the time before history was written down |

**Task 2: Read the passage, and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F)**

		T	F
70.	Stonehenge is located in the English countryside.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
71.	It was built for a religious purpose.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
72.	Scientist have discovered the way how ancient people built Stonehenge.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
73.	If you want to visit the site, you only have to pay a fee for parking.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
74.	Approach to Stonehenge is limited now.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

X)-Write full sentences about Junior Summer Camp in San Francisco, using the words and phrases given. Put the verbs in the present simple for future meaning.

### **Junior Summer Camp in San Francisco, California**

75. Our junior summer camps/ offer/ learners aged 10-17/ all over the world/ opportunity/ improve/ their English language skills.

---



---



---

76. We/ offer/ a full afternoon and evening social programme/ include/ a variety of sports activities/ visits/ local sites of interest.

---



---



---

77. On their first day/ students/ take/ a test/ ensure/ they/ placed/ at an appropriate level.

---



---

78. On arrival/ students/ also receive/ a welcome pack/ include/ information/ the course/ a free student bag.

---



---

79. Students/ have/ progress test in class/ every two weeks/ meet individually/ their teacher/ review/ their progress.

- 
- 
80. At the end/ the course/ students/ receive/ certificate/ as a record/ their English language studies.
- 
-

# UNIT 9: NATURAL DISASTERS

## A. PHONETICS

1)-Write the words from the box in the correct part of the table, according to the stress.

<i>analogy</i>	<i>apology</i>	<i>archaeology</i>	<i>astrology</i>	<i>audiology</i>
<i>bacteriology</i>	<i>biology</i>	<i>biotechnology</i>	<i>ecology</i>	<i>ethnology</i>
<i>futurology</i>	<i>geology</i>	<i>ideology</i>	<i>methodology</i>	<i>microbiology</i>
<i>musicology</i>	<i>philosophy</i>	<i>psychology</i>	<i>sociology</i>	<i>volcanology</i>
<i>biography</i>	<i>geography</i>	<i>telegraphy</i>	<i>photography</i>	<i>calligraphy</i>
<i>radiography</i>	<i>stenography</i>	<i>cosmography</i>	<i>oceanography</i>	<i>historiography</i>

<b>oOoo</b>	<hr/> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/>
<b>ooOoo</b>	<hr/> <hr/> <hr/>
<b>oooOoo</b>	<hr/> <hr/>
<b>oooO</b>	<hr/>

II)-Mark (') the stressed syllable in the underlined words. Then practice saying the sentences.

1. Analogy is the process of comparing one thing with another that has similar features in order to explain it.
2. Audiology is the science that deals with the sense of hearing.
3. Ethnology is the scientific study and comparison of human races.
4. Ideology is a set of ideas that an economic or political system is based on.
5. Biotechnology is use of living cells and bacteria in industrial and scientific processes.
6. Cosmography is the part of science that deals with the general features of the earth and the universe.
7. Calligraphy is beautiful handwriting that you can do with a special pen or brush.
8. Biography is the story of a person's life written by someone else.
9. Oceanography is the scientific study of the ocean.
10. Historiography is the study of writing about history.

## B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I)-Match a word in column A with its description in column B, writing the answer in each blank.

Answer	A	B
_____	1. A thunderstorm	A. It is created when the surface layer of the ground collapses. It varies in size and are found all over the world. It is an area of ground that has no natural external surface drainage. When it rains, all of the water stays inside it and typically drains into the subsurface. It can vary from a few feet to hundreds of acres and from less than 1 to more than 100 feet deep.
_____	2. A tornado	B. The Earth has a crust under the oceans and the land that we live on. This crust made of massive areas of flat rock called tectonic plates, which float on the Earth's mantle, the inside layer of the Earth. When the plates move slowly together, this movement forces energy through the crusts to the

_____	3. A hurricane	Earth's surface. The energy causes the Earth to tremble and shake.
_____	4. An earthquake	C. It is a very bright flash of electricity that happens in a thunderstorm. It is actually a spark that crosses the gap between two clouds or between a cloud and the Earth. It carries an enormous charge of electricity. Trees are burned, metal can be melted and people can be killed.
_____	5. A volcano	D. It is caused by earthquakes at sea. It forms when energy from an earthquake displace hundreds of cubic kilometers of water from the seabed. Large waves begin moving through the ocean from their epicenters. When it reaches shallow water near coastal areas, it increases in height. The sign comes before it strikes when the waterline suddenly retreats, exposing hundreds of meters of beach and seabed.
_____	6. A tsunami	E. It is a very violent windstorm. The air is concentrated and whirls up rapidly. It is grey in colour and looks like an elephant's trunk swaying down from the clouds to touch the ground with its tip.
_____	7. A sinkhole	F. It is a hill or mountain formed when molten material or lave from the inside of the Earth is forced through the Earth's crust by gases. It can produce vast clouds of very fine volcanic dust which looks like smoke.
_____	8. Lightning	G. It is a storm where you hear thunder and see lightning. There is usually heavy rain. It is an electric storm.
_____		H. It is the most violent storm known on Earth. It is a tropical storm. It forms at sea and causes dangerous, stormy seas. It can reach the land and destroy buildings and trees. It can blow high waves

onto the land and cause flooding.

II)-Complete each sentences with the correct word from the box.

*drought*

*flood*

*hurricane*

*landslide*

*tornado*

1. When there is a \_\_\_\_\_, a lot of water covers an area where there usually isn't water.
2. A \_\_\_\_\_ refers to a long time without rain.
3. When there is a \_\_\_\_\_, a lot of rocks and earth fall down a hill.
4. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a storm with a lot of wind that moves over water.
5. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a storm in which the air moves very quickly in a circle.

III)-Fill in each of the numbered blank in the following passage, using the appropriate words or phrases given in the box.

*a*

*because of*

*blown*

*causes*

*normal*

*dry*

*suffer*

*irrigated*

*wells*

*drops*

Drought is an condition that results when the average rainfall for a fertile area (1)\_\_\_\_\_ far below the normal amount for (2)\_\_\_\_\_ long period of time. In areas that are not (3)\_\_\_\_\_, the lack of rain (4)\_\_\_\_\_ farm crops to wither and die. Higher than (5)\_\_\_\_\_ temperatures usually accompany periods of droughts. The soil of a drought area becomes (6)\_\_\_\_\_ and crumbles. Often the rich topsoil is (7)\_\_\_\_\_ away by the hot, dry winds. Streams, ponds, and (8)\_\_\_\_\_ often dry up during a drought, and animals (9)\_\_\_\_\_ and may even die (10)\_\_\_\_\_ the lack of water.

IV)-Use the verbs in the box in the correct form to complete the sentences.

*bury*

*evacuate*

*rage*

*take*

*recover*

*scatter*

*provide*

*suffer*

1. The government \_\_\_\_\_ health and other services to the affected regions.
2. Action were \_\_\_\_\_ to limit the effects of the floods in Quang Ninh.
3. The Red Cross helped homeless families to \_\_\_\_\_ from the disaster through the project.

4. The majority of concerned areas have \_\_\_\_\_ from cholera epidemics after the floods and landslides in Central America.
5. Early September, mudslides caused by heavy rains \_\_\_\_\_ an entire village of 480 inhabitants.
6. Thousands of villagers \_\_\_\_\_ from flood-prone areas after the warnings from the weather bureau.
7. Tiny particles of dust, smoke, salt or pollution droplets that \_\_\_\_\_ through the air to cause haze.
8. The fires \_\_\_\_\_ for more than a week in the southern region of Chile, which has been hit by a severe drought.

V)-Circle the correct verbs in the brackets in this story.

### **My Great Grandmother Meets Hurricane Cleo**

Hurricane Cleo struck the United States in August, 1964. My great grandmother, Ana, was travelling in Miami when the hurricane struck. She (1. said/told) me that she still remembers how scared everyone was.

She (2. said/told) me that the hotel (3. has called/ had called) her room one morning and (4. had said/ had told) her that a big storm (5. is/ was) on its way. They said that all hotel guests (6. have to/ had to) stay in the hotel until the weather forecast (7. tell/said) that it (8. is/was) safe to leave.

She stayed in her room and she turned on the TV, the reports said that a lot of people (9. have been/ had been) injured and that all the roads (10. are/were) flooded. She always (11. says/said) that she still (12. feels/felt) lucky to have survived Hurricane Cleo.

VI)-Complete the sentences with the past perfect form of the verbs in brackets.

1. Anita said she was very sorry for what she (do)\_\_\_\_\_.
2. When Sam (pay)\_\_\_\_\_ the bill, we left the restaurant and went home.
3. It wasn't surprising that she was tired – she (not sleep)\_\_\_\_\_ for two days.
4. The road was blocked because a lorry (break down) \_\_\_\_\_.
5. My mother felt very nervous on the plane because she (not fly) \_\_\_\_\_ before.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ (they/go) home when you arrived?



7. I (hear)\_\_\_\_\_ the story before, so I didn't find it very interesting.
8. After she (try on)\_\_\_\_\_ all the dresses in the shop, she bought the most expensive one.
9. They (not have)\_\_\_\_\_ breakfast when I got up.
10. The children were very excited because they (not see)\_\_\_\_\_ a tiger before.

VII)-Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. After Nick (do)\_\_\_\_\_ his homework, he (go)\_\_\_\_\_ to bed last night.
2. Mai (live)\_\_\_\_\_ in Hai Phong for five years before she (move)\_\_\_\_\_ to Ha Noi three years ago.
3. Phong (tell)\_\_\_\_\_ me yesterday that he (learn)\_\_\_\_\_ French for a year.
4. Ms Hong (work)\_\_\_\_\_ at our school for twenty years before she (retire) \_\_\_\_\_ last June.
5. By the time I (get)\_\_\_\_\_ to Nick's house, his party (already/ start) \_\_\_\_\_.
6. When we (come)\_\_\_\_\_ back to our home village last month, it (change)\_\_\_\_\_ so much.
7. I couldn't recognize my cousin because he (grow)\_\_\_\_\_ a lot.
8. By the time the bus (come)\_\_\_\_\_ this morning. Duong (wait)\_\_\_\_\_ for it for half an hour.

VIII)-Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. Thousands of homes were flooded after Cyclone Kormen (hit)\_\_\_\_\_ Bangladesh.
2. By the time the storm hit the fishing village, all of the boats (return) \_\_\_\_\_ to the port.
3. After several weeks without any drops of rain, the region (suffer)\_\_\_\_\_ from a severe shortage of water for people and animals.
4. Last week the landslide (occur)\_\_\_\_\_ after it (rain) \_\_\_\_\_ heavily for three days in several villages in the mountainous district of Xin Man, Ha Giang Province.

5. Earlier on August 2, the officials (say)\_\_\_\_\_ seven people were killed in the northern provinces of Dien Bien, Lai Chau, and Son La after rain (cause) \_\_\_\_\_ extensive floods across the region.
6. Mount Fuji in Japan last (erupt)\_\_\_\_\_ in 1708, and its eruption (cover) \_\_\_\_\_ the surrounding villages with ash.

IX)-Read the passage, and put the verbs in brackets in the correct passive forms.

The Titanic was a huge ship. It (1. build)\_\_\_\_\_ in Liverpool, England, and sank on its first trip in 1912. Today, you can visit the Titanic Museum in Missouri, USA and see what life was like for people on the Titanic. Visitors (2. greet) \_\_\_\_\_ y people in costumes and (3. give)\_\_\_\_\_ tickets for their journey. Inside, the museum (4. decorate)\_\_\_\_\_ with things from the real Titanic passengers, like clothes, letters, and jewelry. All the items (5. keep)\_\_\_\_\_ in good conditions. You can learn about the passengers and explore the world's most famous ship.

X)-Fill in each blank with ONE suitable word.

### El Nino and La Nina

The tropical Pacific Ocean (1)\_\_\_\_\_ a warming and cooling cycle. This cycle is a completely natural event and usually (2)\_\_\_\_\_ between three to seven years.

When the waters become (3)\_\_\_\_\_, it is called El Nino, and when they become cooler it is called La Nina. During the cycle, the (4)\_\_\_\_\_ of the ocean can change by around 3°C between the warmest and coolest times.

(5)\_\_\_\_\_ off the South American coast have known about this (6)\_\_\_\_\_ event for hundreds of years. When it (7)\_\_\_\_\_, they see a huge fall in the numbers of fish caught. But scientists are only just beginning to (8)\_\_\_\_\_ how the event affects Earth's weather and climate.

### C. SPEAKING

I)-Rearrange the sentences to make a suitable conversation by writing the correct number (1-7) in each blank.

\_\_\_\_\_ A. Thank goodness for that

\_\_\_\_\_ B. What a shame!

\_\_\_\_\_ C. What's going on in the news today?

- \_\_\_\_\_ D. Really?
- \_\_\_\_\_ E. But there haven't been any deaths
- \_\_\_\_\_ F. Well, the *Times* says there was a terrible storm in the north
- \_\_\_\_\_ G. Yes. It says lots of houses were destroyed

II)-Rearrange the sentences in order to make a meaningful conversation, writing the number (1-10) in each blank. Then practice it with your classmate.

- \_\_\_\_\_ A. Nick: A levee is a wall built next to a river to stop the river from overflowing. Well, local people felt angry because the government did not prepare New Orleans for a disaster like Hurricane Katrina, and people did not have shelter and food.
- \_\_\_\_\_ B. Duong: Why did it cause a lot of damage in New Orleans?
- \_\_\_\_\_ C. Nick: Yes. Hurricane Katrina was one of the strongest storms to affect the coast of the United States for the last 100 years.
- \_\_\_\_\_ D. Nick: Yes, but the government did not provide help in time
- \_\_\_\_\_ E. Nick: Because the levees all over the city of New Orleans were broken and collapsed, then 80% of the city was left under water.
- \_\_\_\_\_ F. Duong: Really? That's awful. America is a rich country.
- \_\_\_\_\_ G. Duong: The strongest storm for the last 100 years? What happened then?
- \_\_\_\_\_ H. Duong: This morning our teacher talked about Hurricane Katrina in America in 2005. Do you know much about it, Nick?
- \_\_\_\_\_ I. Duong: What are the levees, Nick?
- \_\_\_\_\_ J. Nick: At first, it was only a tropical depression, and then it quickly grew in strength and soon became a tropical storm.

#### **D. READING**

I)-Read the following brochure, and then tick (✓) the statements that the article recommends.

#### **A Family Emergency Plan**

The best way to deal with an emergency or a disaster is to prepare for it before it happens. You can do this by making a family emergency plan. Here are some tips on how to prepare one.

- Put a list of emergency phone numbers, including the police, fire, and emergency medical department near every phone.
- Make an emergency supplies kit. This should include canned food, bottled water, flashlights, matches, batteries, blankets, a battery-operated radio, a first-aid kit, etc.
- Teach responsible family members how and when to shut off water and electricity sources in the house.
- Learn basic first aid.
- Decide what you will take and where you will go if you have to evacuate.
- Decide what to do if your family is separated. Choose a place to meet in case you can't return to your home.
- Regularly review and practice your plans.

1. Have a plan in case there is an emergency or disaster. ☐
2. Write down emergency telephone numbers. ☐
3. Gather together some things you might need in an emergency. ☐
4. Show young children how to turn on and off the water and electricity. ☐
5. Know how to use the items in a first-aid kit. ☐
6. Decide when to evaluate. ☐
7. Find a place for everyone in your family to go if you aren't together. ☐
8. Practise your plans one time. ☐

II)-Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

El Nino is a weather phenomenon of the Pacific Ocean which is (1)\_\_\_\_\_ by an abnormal (2)\_\_\_\_\_ of water on the surface of the ocean. It has the (3)\_\_\_\_\_ to influence global weather patterns as it brings drought to some continents and (4)\_\_\_\_\_ rain to others. It was first (5)\_\_\_\_\_ by fishermen coming from Spanish ports in the Pacific in the the 17<sup>th</sup> century. It got its name (Spanish for 'boy child') because it usually takes (6)\_\_\_\_\_ near Christmas

time. It can cause catastrophic (7)\_\_\_\_\_. The 1982 El Nino (8)\_\_\_\_\_ in 1,500 deaths, but it can be a lot worse than that. Sea animals, (9)\_\_\_\_\_ fish and birds, also die in large numbers. It is (10)\_\_\_\_\_ that sailors in the Pacific can smell the dead sea-life during El Nino.

- |                   |               |              |                |
|-------------------|---------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. A. happened    | B. caused     | C. origin    | D. done        |
| 2. A. increase    | B. extra      | C. heater    | D. warming     |
| 3. A. proficiency | B. power      | C. practice  | D. performance |
| 4. A. wet         | B. shower     | C. plenty    | D. heavy       |
| 5. A. saw         | B. noticed    | C. caught    | D. time        |
| 6. A. away        | B. care       | C. part      | D. place       |
| 7. A. damage      | B. difficulty | C. hurt      | D. problem     |
| 8. A. resulted    | B. led        | C. caused    | D. gave        |
| 9. A. containing  | B. holding    | C. including | D. involving   |
| 10. A. said       | B. felt       | C. told      | D. mistaken    |

III)-Read the article about storm chasing, and then decide whether the statements are True (T), False (F), or No Information (NI)

### **Storm Chasers**

Tornadoes. Hurricanes. Enormous storms. Just reading these words make people imagine disastrous events that can cause countless injuries and severe damages. No one looks forward to weather reports or breaking news that announces these natural disasters. No one, except a small group of about 100 people known as “storm chasers”.

Who are these people, and what do they do? A storm chaser is a person who tries to get as close to a severe storm as possible. A few storm chasers are scientists who want to learn more about storms and how they develop. They want to be able to learn more so that someday they can better predict when and where storms will occur. With more information, they could help people avoid the severe destruction and high casualties that often happen when huge storms hit. Others are professional photographers, film makers, or TV reporters. Some are tour guides who take people close to the fascinated by nature and chase storms as a hobby.

Storm chasers study weather data and look closely at the sky to guess the timing and location of storms when they form. They hope to be there when a tornado forms

and to follow it as it touches ground. If they are lucky, they will catch a tornado at least once in every five to ten trips.

In 1996, the thriller “Twister” introduced storm chasing to filmgoers. Since then, a lot of people have been fascinated by the topic. There have been TV shows, and hundreds of books about this exciting “sport”.

But storm chasing is not for everyone. It is a dangerous hobby. Roads are often wet and dangerous to drive, severe floods can wash away cars, and lightning storms can cause casualties.

	T	F	NI
1. Storm chasers look for opportunities to study and photograph huge storms.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2. There are a lot of women storm chasers.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3. There are over 1,000 people who are storm chasers.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4. Storm chasers look forward to tornadoes.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5. Storm chasers know exactly when a tornado will hit a town.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6. There are TV shows about storm chasing.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7. “Twister” is the best film about storm chasing.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8. Storm chasing is easy.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

IV)-Read the text carefully, and then do the tasks that follow.

In April 2010, a group of 14- and 15-year-old students from Loughborough, in the UK, went to Iceland on a school trip. They wanted to see things they studied in their Geography lessons at school so they visited an area which has a lot of active volcanoes. However, in the middle of the night on Tuesday 13<sup>th</sup> April the Eyjafjallajökull volcano began to erupt.

Emergency services woke up the students and their teachers in their hotel at 4am. They didn’t have time to get dressed and left in their pyjamas. A bus took them to Reykjavik, the capital of Iceland, where they were safe.

When Eyjafjallajökull erupted, it affected people all over the world. In the local area 800 people left their homes immediately because of floods from local rivers and dangerous smoke and gases. The volcano also sent a big cloud of ash 8km up into the air. This was dangerous for planes because the pilots couldn't see in the ash cloud.

Many countries in Europe, including the UK, France, Sweden and Norway, closed their airports for many days in April. Thousands of travellers around the world couldn't get home. They slept in airports or tried to get to their destinations by car, train, bus or even taxi.

Icelandic volcanoes are very active. When the volcano Laki erupted for eight months in 1783, almost two million people died around the world. It was the worst volcanic eruptions in history. The students from Loughborough were lucky!

**A/-Choose the best title for the text.**

1. Geography lessons in Iceland
2. Thousands of people can't fly to Iceland
3. Students escape when the volcano erupts

**B/ Read the text again, and identify whether the statements are True (T), False (F), or Not mentioned (NM).**

	T	F	NM
1. The students learned about volcanoes before they went to Iceland.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2. They stayed near the Eyjafjallajökull volcano.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3. The volcano woke up the students.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4. The students enjoyed their trip to Iceland.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5. The eruption of Eyjafjallajökull didn't affect local people.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6. In April 2010 many airports closed in Europe.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7. Volcanoes in Iceland do not erupt very often.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8. The eruption of Laki in 1783 wasn't very big.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

V)-Read Mary Ann's story, and answer the questions.

In 1969, Hurricane Camille hit my three-storey blocks of flats near the Gulf of Mexico. First, the sea hit the building and all the windows broke. Then the room flooded. Five minutes later, my bed was floating near the ceiling. Then it floated out of the window. It was dark and the wind was howling. I was terrified. The building was falling down all around me. The wind was awful. It reached a speed of 234 miles per hour. I was cut and bleeding from head to toe. Finally, someone found me 8 km from my house and they took me to hospital.

1. When did Hurricane Camille hit the Gulf of Mexico?

---

2. What happened after the rooms flooded?

---

3. What happened to the building?

---

4. How fast was the wind?

---

5. How far did the water carry Mary Ann?

---

VI)-Read the following passage carefully, then write True (T) or False (F) for each statement.

The people of Kiribati are afraid that one day their country in the not-too-distant future will disappear from the surface of the earth. Several times this year, the Pacific island nation has been flooded by a sudden high tide. These tide, which swept across the island and destroyed houses, came when there was neither wind nor rain. This never happened before.

What is causing these mysterious high tides? The answer may be global warming. When fuels like oil and coal are being burned, pollutants are released, these pollutants hold heat in the earth's atmosphere. Warmer temperatures cause water to expand and also create more water by melting glaciers and polar ice caps.

If the situation continues, scientists say that many countries will suffer, Bangladesh, for example, might lose one-fifth of its land. The coral island nations of the Pacific like Kiribati and the Marshall Islands, however, would face an even worse fate –



they would be swallowed by the sea. The loss of these coral islands would be everyone's loss. Coral formations are home to more species than any other place on the earth.

- |  | T                        | F                        |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. In Kiribati there were sudden high tides coming when there was no wind or rain. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2. High tides without wind or rain often happen in Kiribati.                       | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3. Global warming is definitely the cause of those mysterious high tides.          | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4. The loss of coral islands doesn't affect people on the earth                    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5. Coral reefs play an essential role in marine life.                              | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

VII)-Choose the item among A, B, C or D that best answers the question about the story.

I often hear or read about 'natural disasters' – the eruption of Mount St. Helen, a volcano in the state of Washington. Hurricane Andrew in Florida, the floods in the America Midwest, terrible earthquakes all over the world, huge fires, and so on. But I'll never forget my first personal experience with the strangeness of nature – 'the London Killer Fog' of 1952. It began on Thursday, December 4, when a high-pressure system of warm air covered southern England. With the freezing-cold air below, heavy fog formed. Pollution from factories, cars and coal stoves mixed with the fog. The humidity was terribly high, there was no breeze at all. Traffic such as cars, trains, boats stopped. People couldn't see, and some walked onto the railroad tracks or into the river. It was hard to breathe, and many people got sick. Finally, on Tuesday, December 9, the wind came and the fog went away. But after that, even more people got sick. Many of them died.

7. Which 'natural disaster' isn't mentioned in the passage?  
E. a volcano                      F. a tornado                      G. a flood                      H. a hurricane
8. What is the writer's unforgettable personal experience?  
A. the London killer                      B. the heavy fog in London in 1952  
C. a high-pressure system                      D. the strangeness of nature
9. How long did the "London Killer Fog" last?

- E. For four days                      F. For five days                      G. For six days                      H. For a week

10. What didn't happen during the time of the 'London Killer Fog'?

- E. Pollution                      F. Heavy rain                      G. Humidity                      H. Heavy fog

11. Why did the traffic stop?

- E. Because of the rain                      F. Because of the windy weather  
G. Because of the humid weather                      H. Because of the heavy fog

VIII)-Choose the item among A, B, C or D that best answers the question about the passage.

How can scientists predict earthquakes? Earthquakes are not scattered anywhere but happen in certain areas. They happen in places where pieces of the earth's surface meet. For example, earthquakes often occur on the west-coast of North and South America, around the Mediterranean Sea, and along the Pacific coast of Asia.

Another way to predict earthquakes is to look for changes in the earth's surface, like a sudden drop of water level in the ground. Some people say animals can predict earthquakes. Before earthquakes people have seen chickens sitting in trees, fish jumping out of the water, snake leaving their holes and other animals acting strangely.

After an earthquake happens, people can die from lack of food, water and medical supplies. The amount of destruction caused by an earthquake depend on types of building, soil conditions and population. Of the 6000 earthquakes on the earth each year, only about fifteen cause great damage and many deaths.

1. Earthquakes happen in certain areas where \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. the population is large                      B. pieces of the earth's surface meet  
C. the soil conditions are stable                      D. many buildings are built
2. Earthquakes often happen along \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. the east-coast of North America                      B. the east-coast of South America  
C. the Pacific coast of Asia                      D. the coast of Australia
3. Looking for \_\_\_\_\_ can help predict earthquakes.  
A. changes in the earth's surface                      B. water beneath the earth's surface  
C. drops of water                      D. water currents

4. After an earthquake, as a result of \_\_\_\_\_ people may die.
  - A. lack of food
  - B. lack of friendship
  - C. lack of information
  - D. lack of knowledge
5. The passage mainly discusses \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. the damage caused by earthquakes
  - B. how strong earthquakes are
  - C. strange animal behaviors
  - D. how to predict earthquakes

### E. WRITING

I)-Complete the sentences with the cues given in the table, using the Past Perfect.

<i>not study</i>	<i>have a haircut</i>	<i>not cook enough food</i>
<i>break my leg</i>	<i>not sleep well</i>	<i>alarm clock not go off</i>

0. She was late because *her alarm clock hadn't gone off*.
1. I couldn't play football because \_\_\_\_\_.
2. They failed the exam because \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I didn't recognize him because \_\_\_\_\_.
4. She was tired because \_\_\_\_\_.
5. We were hungry because \_\_\_\_\_.

II)-Write full sentences about severe landslides in Mekong Delta provinces, using the words and phrase given.

1. Recently / landslides/ sweep away/ hectares/ vegetables/ fruit crops/ many houses.  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
2. Last week/ An Hiep Commune/ Dong Thap Province/ meet/ a high risk/ landslide disaster.  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
3. A severe landslide/ occur/ there/ three days ago/ and it/ destroy/ completely over 2,000 square meters/ agricultural land/ at least five houses.  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

---

4. Last year/ there/ be/ seven landslide/ An Hiep commune/ causing a loss/ more than VND 2 billion.

---

---

5. In Can Tho/ a landslide/ occur/ Cai Rang District/ and/ bury/ three houses/ 50 meters of road/ three week ago.

---

---

6. The authorities/ already have/ plans/ move households/ high risk zones/ safer places.

---

III)-Write full sentences about a drought in Central Viet Nam, using the words and phrases given.

#### **Drought in Central Vietnam**

1. A drought emergency/ declare/ last month/ after five months without rain/ Ninh Thuan/ other provinces/ Central Viet Nam.

---

---

2. A drought/ a long period/ when/ there/ little or no rain.

---

---

3. Hot weather/ the highest temperature/ 42 degree Celsius/ hit/ Central Viet Nam.

---

---

4. In particular/ rainfall/ be/ lower/ the average/ the past few years.

---

---

5. In Ninh Thuan/ about 50,000 local people/ suffer/ drinking water shortage.

---

---

6. Hundreds/ hectares/ rice and vegetables/ destroy/ and/ 500 cattle/ die/ prolonged drought.

---

---

---

7. In Gia Lai/ other provinces/ water/ many reservoirs/ drop/ the “dead” level/ several months.

---

---

8. The provinces/ receive/ financial supports/ worth VND 172 billion/ the government.

---

---

TEST (UNIT 9)

I)-Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- |                 |               |             |                |
|-----------------|---------------|-------------|----------------|
| 1. A. rescue    | B. supply     | C. erupt    | D. damage      |
| 2. A. mudslide  | B. earthquake | C. typhoon  | D. debris      |
| 3. A. hurricane | B. tornado    | C. volcano  | D. eruption    |
| 4. A. disaster  | B. injury     | C. tsunami  | D. provision   |
| 5. A. tropical  | B. natural    | C. terrible | D. destructive |

II)-Choose the best answer A, B,C or D to complete the sentences.

6. A \_\_\_\_\_ is sudden flooding that occurs when water rises quickly within several hours of a heavy rain.  
A. quick flood    B. rapid flood    C. flash flood    D. hot flood
7. Monsoon rains across Thailand \_\_\_\_\_ millions of people in 61 of its provinces.  
A. has affected    B. have affected    C. have effect    D. have influenced
8. Typhoon Haiyan made the damage, and \_\_\_\_\_ of life became great in the Philippines.  
A. lose    B. loses    C. losing    D. loss
9. Thanks to the extensive \_\_\_\_\_ measures taken, loss of life in Typhoon Xangsane in Da Nang and other provinces seemed to be relatively low.  
A. prevent    B. preventive    C. prevention    D. preventing

10. A number of other provinces will declare drought \_\_\_\_\_ in the coming weeks.  
A. accident      B. emergency      C. event      D. situation
11. In some areas, human \_\_\_\_\_ can be a contributing factor in causing landslides.  
A. acts      B. actions      C. acting      D. activities
12. The Pacific Ring of Fire is an area of frequent \_\_\_\_\_ and volcanic \_\_\_\_\_, encircling the basin of the Pacific Ocean.  
A. floods-eruptions      B. earthquake-flood  
C. flood-eruption      D. earthquakes-eruptions
13. Magma is the liquid rock inside a volcano, but lava is magma that \_\_\_\_\_ a volcano.  
A. flows      B. flows into      C. flows out      D. flows out of
14. A soft, loose soil may \_\_\_\_\_ more intensely than hard rock at the same distance from the same earthquake.  
A. erupt      B. rage      C. shake      D. collapse
15. During the next 24 hours, the storm will be moving north, around 10 km per hour and is expected to \_\_\_\_\_ the southeastern part of China's Guangdong Province.  
A. strike      B. scatter      C. bury      D. struck

III)-Complete the sentences, using the correct form of the words in brackets.

16. Tsunami is a Japanese term for an unusually large ocean wave caused by undersea earthquake, landslide, or volcanic \_\_\_\_\_ (erupt)
17. During a volcano, you should follow the \_\_\_\_\_ order issued by authorities. (evaluate)
18. Thunderstorms can be \_\_\_\_\_, while tornadoes, and lightning can be life threatening. (destroy)
19. \_\_\_\_\_ of the deadly Nepal earthquake have told the horror of the moment when it struck, leaving more than 3,000 dead. (survive)
20. The tents will be used for medical camps and temporary \_\_\_\_\_ after the earthquake in Nepal. (accommodate)
21. A website in Pakistan is helping coordinate the \_\_\_\_\_ of aid in the flood disaster. (provide)

IV)-Fill in each blank with the correct word/ phrase from the box.

rainstorm	properly	emergency	tsunami
debris	ash	assistance	warnings
damage	climate changes	weather bureau	officials

22. Due to the high loss of both human lives and property, the Government of Vietnam issued an appeal for international \_\_\_\_\_.
23. Serious floods caused loss of human lives, as well as significant material \_\_\_\_\_.
24. On March 23, 2011, Japan suffered a huge \_\_\_\_\_ caused by an earthquake.
25. Local people asked weather \_\_\_\_\_ to issue an hourly update for the disaster.
26. Natural disasters can also result in the tremendous destruction of \_\_\_\_\_, and financial loss.
27. Avalanche is a large body of snow, ice or rock and \_\_\_\_\_ sliding down a mountain.
28. According to the Philippines \_\_\_\_\_, within the next 24 hours Parma could develop into a super typhoon.
29. The National Hurricane Center issues \_\_\_\_\_, forecasts, and analyses of hazardous tropical weather.
30. When volcanoes erupt, clouds of \_\_\_\_\_ cover plants making them incredible.
31. One June 9, authorities in Ninh Thuan Province declared a drought \_\_\_\_\_ for the first time after five months of lacking rains.
32. \_\_\_\_\_ such as El Nino can also have a dramatic effect on the risk of wildfires.
33. A powerful \_\_\_\_\_ in Ha Noi that lasted one hour on Wednesday afternoon left three people dead, and caused power outages and minor flooding in many streets.

V)-Complete the sentences, using the correct passive form of the verbs in brackets.

44. Severe damage to environment \_\_\_\_\_ by prolonged droughts in Central Vietnam last July. (cause)
45. Tomorrow the dam \_\_\_\_\_ to prevent salt water from entering the fields in Tien Giang Province. (close)
46. The hot weather \_\_\_\_\_ to continue while there were longer hours of sunshine. (expect)
47. Two naval ships \_\_\_\_\_ to the island to rescue fishermen. (send)
48. Oil rigs throughout the Gulf of Mexico \_\_\_\_\_ during Hurricane Katrina. (hit)
49. Roofs of thousands of houses \_\_\_\_\_ across the road during the cyclone. (blow)
50. Villages along the river \_\_\_\_\_ about a high risk of landslide every year. (warn)
51. Fires in the wild \_\_\_\_\_ by Forest Fire Fighters who use different techniques before the fires can destroy too much land or property. (put out)
52. More than 20 streets in Bien Hoa \_\_\_\_\_ to a depth of up to 80 centimeters last Friday. (flood)
53. After Typhoon Linda, over 2,200 school rooms \_\_\_\_\_, and 4,000 school rooms \_\_\_\_\_. (destroy – damage)

VI)-Read the passage, and write the correct form of each verb in brackets. Use the *past perfect*, or the *simple past* (active or passive).

### **Typhoon Linda in Viet Nam**

During the night of November 2, 1997, Typhoon Linda (44. hit) \_\_\_\_\_ South Viet Nam, and (45. affect) \_\_\_\_\_ all the Southwestern provinces. Before the disaster (46. occur) \_\_\_\_\_, the Government of Viet Nam (47. warn) \_\_\_\_\_ populations in the areas. Moreover, the government (48. instruct) \_\_\_\_\_ the provinces to combat the effects of the typhoon. Thanks to these efforts, more than 3,500 fishermen (49. rescue) \_\_\_\_\_. However, 464 people (50. kill) \_\_\_\_\_, over 3,000 boats (51. sink) \_\_\_\_\_, and about 100,000 houses (52. destroy) \_\_\_\_\_. The Government also (53. take) \_\_\_\_\_ all measures to provide health and other services to the affected population.



VII)-Fill in each blank with ONE suitable word.

### **Drought**

Drought occurs when there is a (54)\_\_\_\_\_ of rainfall over a long period of time, resulting in water shortages for groups of people, activities or the (55)\_\_\_\_\_. Droughts have a significant effect (56)\_\_\_\_\_ agriculture and can harm the economy.

Water vapour needs to rise high through the atmosphere in order to form (57)\_\_\_\_\_. However, in (58)\_\_\_\_\_ of high pressure, water vapour does not rise and no rain or clouds will form. When the high pressure stays in an area for a prolonged length of (59)\_\_\_\_\_, the result is drought,.

VIII)-Rearrange the sentences to make a meaningful conversation, writing the letter (A-J) in each blank. Then practice it with your classmate.

60. \_\_\_\_\_ A. Nick: I think so, Duong. If we are outside, stay away from water because water conducts electricity.

61. \_\_\_\_\_ B. Duong: I know. It carries an enormous charge of electricity. Trees are burned, metal can be melted and people can be killed. Is that right?

62. \_\_\_\_\_ C. Duong: Yes, water is a conductor of electricity. And I think if we are outside, we should stay away from trees or electricity poles.

63. \_\_\_\_\_ D. Duong: Lightning struck a village in Dong Thap Province, and 2 people were killed.

64. \_\_\_\_\_ E. Nick: And what's more, if your hair stands on end which is caused by electricity in the air, bend your body close the ground with your hands on your knees and your head between them.

65. \_\_\_\_\_ F. Duong: It's a practical way to know how close the lightning is, Nick. We can be safe from lightning if we do not go fishing or boating during a thunderstorm.

66. \_\_\_\_\_ G. Nick: That's shocking! Lightning kills and injured more people each year than hurricanes or tornadoes in America.

67. \_\_\_\_\_ H. Duong: Did you watch the news last night, Nick?

68. \_\_\_\_\_ I. Nick: Yes, that's right. We see the lightning before we hear the thunder because light travels faster than sound. It is easy to calculate how far away the

lightning is by counting the seconds between the flash of lightning and the clap of thunder.

69. \_\_\_\_\_ J. Nick: No, I didn't. What happened?

IX)-Choose the item among A, B, C or D that best answer the question about the passage.

The large movement of the earth under the water causes a very large and powerful tsunami. That tsunami was called the Asian Tsunami in most of the world. It was called the Boxing Day Tsunami in England, Australia, South Africa and Canada because it happened on the holiday which they call Boxing Day. The tsunami caused a lot of damage to countries such as the Philippines, Thailand, Indonesia and Sri Lanka.

Waves as high as 30 meters killed many people and damaged or destroyed a lot of buildings and other property. Over 225,000 people died or they were not found after the tsunami. The waves traveled as far away as South Africa (8,000 kilometers) where as many as 8 people died because of high water caused by the waves. Because of how much damage was caused and the number of people the earthquake affected, over \$7 billion was donated to help the **survivors** and rebuild the areas damaged.

70. Why was the tsunami called the Boxing Day Tsunami in England?

- A. Because it happened when people were boxing.
- B. Because it happened when people were collecting boxes
- C. Because it happened on Boxing Day
- D. Because it destroyed a lot of boxes

71. How high were the waves?

- |                       |                       |                  |                             |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|------------------|-----------------------------|
| A. thirteen<br>meters | B. eighteen<br>meters | C. thirty meters | D. two<br>hundred<br>meters |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|------------------|-----------------------------|

72. What were some people in South Africa killed by?

- |               |               |              |            |
|---------------|---------------|--------------|------------|
| A. earthquake | B. high water | C. high wind | D. volcano |
|---------------|---------------|--------------|------------|

73. Which of the following is NOT true?

- A. Only in Asia the tsunami was called Asian Tsunami
- B. The tsunami caused a lot of damage to Indonesia
- C. Many people died because of the high waves
- D. A lot of money was raised to help people

74. What does the word '**survivors**' in the last sentence mean?

- A. Houses that aren't destroyed
- B. Offices are being rebuilt
- C. People who were dead
- D. People who are left alive

X)-Write full sentences for the article "Southern Thailand hit by smoke from Indonesia", using the words and phrases given.

### Southern Thailand hit by smoke from Indonesia

75. Heavy smoke/ forest fires/ result/ worst pollution/ for/ over ten years/ southern Thailand.

---



---

76. The smoke/ threaten/ local people's health/ seven provinces/ the south.

---



---

77. Dangerous levels/ pollution/ record/ the Thai city of Songkhla.

---



---

78. Earlier this month/ a number of flights/ Phuket/ cancel/ because/ the smoke.

---



---

79. In the past two months/ thousands/ forest fires/ Indonesia/ leave/ bad effects/ Southeast Asia.

---



---

80. Pollution/ also increase/ rates/ respiratory illnesses.

---



---

### TEST YOURSELF 3

I)-Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

1. A. emergency      B. astrology      C. scientific      D. environment
2. A. survivor      B. property      C. resident      D. government

3. A. historic                      B. iconic                      C. spectacle                      D. attraction
4. A. official                      B. together                      C. koala                      D. popular
5. A. poisonous                      B. pollutant                      C. artistic                      D. aquatic

II)-Fill in each blank with the correct word from the box.

<i>landscapes</i>	<i>while</i>	<i>but</i>	<i>area</i>	<i>capital</i>
<i>variety</i>	<i>development</i>	<i>popular</i>	<i>mountainous</i>	<i>diverse</i>

6. Cardiff is the largest city and also the \_\_\_\_\_ of Wales.
7. The most \_\_\_\_\_ sport in Canada is ice hockey.
8. The capital city of New Zealand is Wellington \_\_\_\_\_ the largest city is Auckland.
9. The Scottish Highland are a \_\_\_\_\_ region of Scotland.
10. A \_\_\_\_\_ of wildlife can be found in Scotland, including seals, mountain hare, and the golden eagle.
11. Rugby is the most popular spectator sport in New Zealand \_\_\_\_\_ football, cricket, netball, golf are popular among participants.
12. Australia is the world's sixth largest country by \_\_\_\_\_ while Canada is the second.
13. Australia has a range of different \_\_\_\_\_, including urban areas, mountain ranges, desert and rain forests.
14. The United States is a \_\_\_\_\_ country with a multicultural society.
15. The US was the leading force behind the \_\_\_\_\_ of the Internet.

III)-Match the celebrations and holidays in the English-speaking countries with their activities, and write the answer in each blank.

Answer	Celebrations & holidays	Activities
_____	16. Independence Day	A. It is an Irish religious holiday, Irish and Irish Americans celebrate the day. They decorate their houses and streets with green shamrocks and wear something in green. In large cities, long parades march through the streets.
_____	17. April Fool's	B. In some areas of Great Britain, St. Andrew is

	Day	regarded as the patron of lace-makers. At the evening of the day, the women wear men's dress, and the men wear female dress.
_____	18. Thanks giving Day	C. On the 1 <sup>st</sup> of March each year, you can see people walking around London with leeks pinned to their coats. A leek is the national emblem of Wales. Many Welsh people who live in London or other cities outside Wales like to show their solidarity on their national day.
_____	19. Boxing Day	D. It is on July 4 <sup>th</sup> . This day commemorates the signing of the Declaration of Independence and establishing the USA.
_____	20. St. Patrick's Day	E. People in love send special cards with hearts, flowers, and loving words.
_____	21. St. Andrew's Day	F. On April 1 <sup>st</sup> people play jokes on each other.
_____	22. St. David's Day	G. On the 4 <sup>th</sup> Thursday in November, American families meet for a special dinner with turkey and pumpkin pie. They give thanks to God for the past year and remember the first harvest of the first European Americans in 1621.
_____	23. St. Valentine's Day	H. Boxing Day in the United Kingdom is the day after Christmas Day and falls on December 26. Traditionally, it was a day when employers distributed money, food, cloth (material) or other valuable goods to their employees. In modern times, it is an important day for sporting events.

IV)-Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

24. Would you go to his party if he (invite)\_\_\_\_\_ you?

25. I (can/ help) \_\_\_\_\_ you translate this text into French if we had a dictionary.

26. We (email)\_\_\_\_\_ her if we had her address.

27. If I (know) \_\_\_\_\_ the answer, I wouldn't need to ask.

28. I'd probably buy a laptop if it (be)\_\_\_\_\_ cheaper.

29. Where would you live if you (have) \_\_\_\_\_ the choice?
30. If you (have) \_\_\_\_\_ 20 brothers and sisters, think how many birthday presents you (get) \_\_\_\_\_!
31. If everyone (speak) \_\_\_\_\_ the same language, do you think life (be) \_\_\_\_\_ better?
32. I'm sorry, I don't know. If I (know) \_\_\_\_\_ the answer, I (tell) \_\_\_\_\_ you.
33. I don't know what I (do) \_\_\_\_\_ if you (not be) \_\_\_\_\_ here to help me.

V)-Rearrange the sentences in order to make a meaningful conversation, writing the letter (A-J) in each blank. The first (0) has been done for you.

- 0            Mai: I have read an article about Typhoon Linda in 1997, Nick. It is considered the most severe storm to hit Viet Nam for more than 100 years.
34. \_\_\_\_    A. Nick: How wonderful! What was the story, Mai?
35. \_\_\_\_    B. Mai: Well, she tried to balance her ship and order her sailors to throw all the fish they had already caught back into the sea and remove water from the bottom of the ship.
36. \_\_\_\_    C. Nick: That's awful. How about rescue workers? Could they do anything to help fishermen on board?
37. \_\_\_\_    D. Mai: Boats and ships near hers were sinking, and she could hear the shouts for rescue from them. She told her sailors to throw their two buoys into the sea. After five hours of struggling, her crew and she brought 36 people on board. I think she was in fact a heroine, Nick.
38. \_\_\_\_    E. Mai: 480 people were killed, 1,300 boats sank, and over 100,000 houses were damaged or destroyed.
39. \_\_\_\_    F. Nick: What could she do to rescue herself and others?
40. \_\_\_\_    G. Mai: On that fateful night, Ms. Hong was on board with four of her crew. The storm arrived so fast that no one could do anything.
41. \_\_\_\_    H. Nick: Oh, no! The most severe storm? Did it cause great damage, Mai?
42. \_\_\_\_    I. Nick: That was the right thing to do. How could she rescue fishermen from other boats?

43. \_\_\_\_\_ J. Mai: Yes. They rescued more than 3,500 fishermen. I also read the story of Captain Nguyen Thi Hong, who rescued 36 people during the fierce Typhoon Linda.

VI)- Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

### Water Pollution in India

Contamination of water from any external source that makes it (44)\_\_\_\_\_ to life is known as water pollution. (45)\_\_\_\_\_ the fast industrial development and modern civilization, the problem of water pollution is (46)\_\_\_\_\_ day by day. The (47)\_\_\_\_\_ sources of water pollution are domestic wastes, agricultural wastes, sewage disposal, industrial wastes, radioactive wastes and oil leakages.

All the Indian rivers, including the holy river Ganga, have become highly polluted today. However, the Ganga Action Plan to control its water from pollution has not been proved (48)\_\_\_\_\_. The (49)\_\_\_\_\_ of water pollution is widespread. It causes many severe water-borne diseases.

According to WHO, 21 per cent of all (50)\_\_\_\_\_ diseases in India are water-borne diseases. Oil is the main pollutant of the sea water. Huge tankers often dump oil into the sea. This act of dumping (51)\_\_\_\_\_ kills sea plants and animals.

- |     |                |                      |                     |                      |
|-----|----------------|----------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| 44. | A. harm        | B. harmful           | C. harmless         | D. unharmed          |
| 45. | A. At          | B. Of                | C. In               | D. With              |
| 46. | A. increase    | B. increasing        | C. increased        | D. to increase       |
| 47. | A. most        | B. more              | C. major            | D. hard              |
| 48. | A. success     | B. successful        | C. unsuccessful     | D. succeeded         |
| 49. | A. effect      | B. effects           | C. affect           | D. affects           |
| 50. | A. communicate | B. communicativ<br>e | C. communicabl<br>e | D. communicatio<br>n |
| 51. | A. poisons     | B. poisonous         | C. poisoning        | D. poisoned          |

VII)-Fill in each blank in the following passage with ONE suitable word.

In the first 20 years of the 20<sup>th</sup> century, English medium education became popular for all groups in Singapore. By the 1950s nearly all children went to school, and the majority were educated in (52)\_\_\_\_\_.

Since Singapore became an independent Republic in 1965, the (53)\_\_\_\_\_ of English has increased still further. For many Singaporeans, English is the (54)\_\_\_\_\_ language. Many families (55)\_\_\_\_\_ English at home and it is one of the (56)\_\_\_\_\_ languages learnt by about half of the current pre-school (57)\_\_\_\_\_.

Over half of the population born since 1965 is (58)\_\_\_\_\_ speakers of English, and the proportion of this group is still (59)\_\_\_\_\_.

VIII)-Read the text, and do the tasks that follow.

### Earthquakes

Earthquakes are among the deadliest natural disasters, causing the largest numbers of casualties, the highest death tolls, and the greatest destruction. In 1556 in China, the deadliest earthquake in history killed 830,000 people. But many other earthquakes have caused the deaths of more than 100,000 people, and it is not unusual, even in modern times, for an earthquake death toll to reach 20,000 to 30,000 people with hundreds of thousands left homeless and with countless injured. The floodwaters of the 2004 tsunami in Sumatra, which killed over 200,000 people, were caused by a catastrophic earthquake.

**Task 1: Match a word in column A with its definition in column B, writing the answer in each blank.**

Answer	A	B
_____	60. deadly (adj)	A. a person killed in a war or disaster
_____	61. casualty (n)	B. very many
_____	62. (death) toll (n)	C. causing great damage
_____	63. countless (adj)	D. causing death
_____	64. catastrophic (adj)	E. the number of people who were killed by something.

**Task 2: Decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).**

T F



65. Earthquakes are one of the deadliest natural disasters. ☐ ☐
66. In modern times, the number of deaths caused by an earthquake is limited. ☐ ☐
67. China is the country with the deadliest earthquake in history. ☐ ☐
68. Earthquakes cause lots of death toll, homelessness and injuries. ☐ ☐
69. Earthquakes do not cause tsunamis at all. ☐ ☐

IX)-Read the passage carefully, and then answer the questions below.

### **Super Typhoon Haiyan**

Super Typhoon Haiyan is one of the strongest tropical cyclones ever observed. It ripped through the Philippines, and the destruction across the islands was disastrous and widespread. Houses and buildings were leveled by the storm's powerful winds. Trees fell down and neighborhoods were under flood water. One CNN reporter, upon seeing the hard-hit city of Tacloban, said: "It is like a tsunami has hit here." About 9.5 million people have been affected by the typhoon. Typhoon Haiyan weakened to a tropical storm, but at least five people died in Vietnam when Haiyan hit the country. Recovery from the monster typhoon, locally known as Yolanda, would be long and difficult.

70. What is Super Typhoon Haiyan considered?

---

71. What is another name for Typhoon Haiyan?

---

72. How was the destruction in the Philippines caused by Typhoon Haiyan?

---

73. How many people have been affected by Typhoon Haiyan?

---

74. How many people in Viet Nam died when the typhoon hit the country?

---

75. How was the recovery from the typhoon?

---

X)-Write the sentences describing the National Cherry Blossom Festival in Washington. DC, based on the calendar of events. You may use the verbs like *include, enjoy, offer, take part in, watch, see..*

**The National Cherry Blossom Festival calendar of events.**

Festival	Date	Activity
Opening Ceremony	Saturday, March 21	a variety of live entertainment including the AUN-J Classic Orchestra, pop singer Misato Watanabe, jazz and classical pianist Miami Morita and singer/song writer Deborah Bond
Blossom Kite Festival	Saturday, March 28	kite flying competition, special demonstrations and kite making for children.
Southwest Waterfront Fireworks Festival	Saturday, April 14	practical activities, musical entertainment, food and drink
National Cherry Blossom Festival Parade	Saturday, April 11	marching bands, dance troupes, giant helium balloons and special celebrity guests
Sakura Matsuri – Japanese Street Festival	Saturday, April 11	arts, crafts, demonstrations, live entertainment, food and drink

76. The Opening Ceremony on Saturday, March 21 includes \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

77. \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

78. \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

79. \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

80.

---

---

---

---

# UNIT 10: COMMUNICATION

## A. PHONETICS

1)-Write the words from the box in the correct part of the table, according to the stress pattern.

<i>purity</i>	<i>continuity</i>	<i>inactivity</i>	<i>longevity</i>	<i>mentality</i>	<i>density</i>
<i>gravity</i>	<i>capability</i>	<i>clarity</i>	<i>facility</i>	<i>hospitality</i>	<i>nationality</i>
<i>similarity</i>	<i>priority</i>	<i>authority</i>	<i>relativity</i>	<i>visibility</i>	<i>generosity</i>
<i>majority</i>	<i>minority</i>	<i>fatality</i>	<i>curiosity</i>	<i>opportunity</i>	<i>quality</i>
<i>quantity</i>	<i>reality</i>	<i>community</i>	<i>university</i>	<i>possibility</i>	<i>security</i>
<i>additive</i>	<i>appositive</i>	<i>insensitive</i>	<i>positive</i>	<i>infinitive</i>	<i>primitive</i>
<i>inquisitive</i>	<i>repetitive</i>	<i>transitive</i>	<i>definitive</i>	<i>acquisitive</i>	<i>genitive</i>

<b>Ooo</b>	<hr/> <hr/> <hr/>
<b>oOoo</b>	<hr/> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/>
<b>ooOoo</b>	<hr/> <hr/> <hr/>

--	--

**II)-Fill the gaps with the words in Exercise I, and practice saying the sentences.**

1. That city has a high population\_\_\_\_\_.
2. We should know how to use the \_\_\_\_\_ features within Skype.
3. Skype can be a wonderful \_\_\_\_\_ to expand learning situations through voice, text and video sessions.
4. A social network helps people find and connect with their \_\_\_\_\_.
5. I think “Likes” and nice comments on Facebook are \_\_\_\_\_ feedback.
6. You should take \_\_\_\_\_ for your own safety when you take part in social networks.

**B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR**

**I)-Match the emoticon and abbreviation in column A with the phrase with the same meaning in column B. Write the answer in each blank.**

Answer	A	B
_____	9. ☺	A. Let me know.
_____	1. LOL	B. I’m smiling
_____	2. IMHO	C. Are you okay?
_____	3. ☹	D. Laughing out loud
_____	4. GR8 2 C U	E. By the way
_____	5. BTW	F. In my humble opinion
_____	6. LMK	G. See you later
_____	7. C U L8R	H. Greet to see you.
_____	8. R U OK?	I. I’m not happy.

**II)-Complete the sentences with the verbs given in the table.**

<i>leave</i>	<i>make</i>	<i>post</i>	<i>send</i>	<i>take</i>
--------------	-------------	-------------	-------------	-------------

1. Just a minute – I need to \_\_\_\_\_ a quick phone call.
2. If I’m not at home, you can \_\_\_\_\_ message with my dad.
3. You look very funny. Just a minute, I’m going to \_\_\_\_\_ a photo of you.

4. I'm just going out to \_\_\_\_\_ an important letter.  
 5. It's Mai's birthday on Sunday. Don't forget to \_\_\_\_\_ her a card.

**III)-Match the verbs in column A with the nouns in column B to make meaningful phrases, and write the answer in each blank.**

Answer	A	B
_____	1. express	A. eye contact
_____	2. achieve	B. a message
_____	3. hold	C. your head
_____	4. impress	D. a question
_____	5. make	E. an opinion
_____	6. nod	F. a rule
_____	7. send	G. a result
_____	8. ask	H. an answer
_____	9. follow	I. a conversation
_____	10. give	J. other people

#### **IV)-Ways of communicating**

**A/-What can you see in the photos? Which phrases in the table do you connect with each item?**

<i>take/ send a photo</i>	<i>write a letter</i>	<i>make a phone call</i>
<i>write a note</i>	<i>post a letter/ card</i>	<i>send/ receive an e-mail</i>
<i>send a card</i>	<i>leave a message</i>	<i>send/ get a text message</i>
<i>go on the Internet</i>	<i>check your messages</i>	<i>call someone</i>

Picture a: \_\_\_\_\_

Picture b: \_\_\_\_\_

Picture c: \_\_\_\_\_

Picture d: \_\_\_\_\_

Picture e: \_\_\_\_\_

Picture f: \_\_\_\_\_

**B/-Complete the sentences in as many ways as you can, using the phrases in section A.**

1. If you need to contact someone urgently, you can \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The cheapest way to keep in touch is to \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_.
3. If you need to find some information quickly, you can \_\_\_\_\_.
4. If the person you call doesn't answer, you can \_\_\_\_\_.
5. 100 years ago if people wanted to communicate with each other, they \_\_\_\_\_.
6. If you want to wish someone happy birthday, you can \_\_\_\_\_.
7. If you're on holiday and want to contact your friends, you can \_\_\_\_\_.
8. If you go out and you want to leave a message for a member of your family, you can \_\_\_\_\_.
9. If you want to say thank you for a meal or present, you can \_\_\_\_\_.
10. If you're bored and can't think of anything to do, you can \_\_\_\_\_.

**V)-Put the verbs in brackets in the future continuous tense to show what will be happening in the year of 2100.**

**In the year of 2100,...**

1. We \_\_\_\_\_ information with the help of hybrid languages, using visuals rather than letters. (share)
2. We \_\_\_\_\_ a universal translator to deal with any foreign language. (use)
3. Scientists \_\_\_\_\_ man-made meat because there will be no land for farming. (develop)
4. Advanced technology \_\_\_\_\_ people to avoid the feeling of pain. (help)
5. Doctors \_\_\_\_\_ the Vscan - a simple handheld device to see what is going on inside the patient's body. (use)
6. Scientists \_\_\_\_\_ the deserts to farming lands. (change)

7. We \_\_\_\_\_ the scanning technology to create the metal products.  
(use)
8. Scientists \_\_\_\_\_ the technology of organs regrowth so that there will not be any disabled people. (develop)
9. Scientists \_\_\_\_\_ the DNA banks to save endangered species. (use)
10. "Information lens" \_\_\_\_\_ our eyes to get details of what is seeing.  
(make)

**VI)-Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.**

1. My mother wants me (post) \_\_\_\_\_ this letter before afternoon.
2. He prefers (have) \_\_\_\_\_ children soup rather than (drink) \_\_\_\_\_ milk.
3. My mother made my brother (tidy) \_\_\_\_\_ his room.
4. The teacher told his students (stop) \_\_\_\_\_ making noise.
5. My father doesn't mind (do) \_\_\_\_\_ the housework, but he hates (do) \_\_\_\_\_ the cooking.
6. Mai suggested (go) \_\_\_\_\_ for a drink.

**C. SPEAKING**

**I)-Read the text messages from your friends Nick and Mai. Write the text messages in the full form and also write replies to them using some of the "NetLingo" in the box.**

<i>n</i>	<i>2moro</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>wd</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>luv</i>	<i>thx</i>	<i>ur</i>
<i>2</i>	<i>c u</i>	<i>@</i>	<i>abt</i>	<i>gr8</i>	<i>btw</i>	<i>r</i>	<i>xx</i>

1. Hi! r u free to meet 2moro 4 a drink? Where? When? c u! Nick xx

\_\_\_\_\_

You reply: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Hello. We're having a party this Saturday @ my home. Can u come? R u going 2 bring anyone? Let me know. Tnx! Mai

\_\_\_\_\_

Your reply: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



**II)-Complete the telephone calls.**

***A/-You phone your friend, Nick. His sister Suzj answers.***

Suzj: Hello?

You: (1) \_\_\_\_\_

Suzj: I'm not sure if he's in ... just a minute. NICK!!! Sorry he's not here. He's probably at his uncle's. He's usually there after four o'clock.

You: (2) \_\_\_\_\_

Suzj: OK, what's your number?

You: (3) \_\_\_\_\_

Suzj: OK, I'll tell him.

You: (4) \_\_\_\_\_

Suzj: Bye

***B/-You call your friend, David, but you hear an answering machine message.***

David: Hello, this is David speaking. I'm afraid I'm not here at the moment, but if you'd like to leave a message, speak after the tone. (BEEP)

You: (5) \_\_\_\_\_

**III)-Complete the conversation, using the phrases or sentences (A-J) given.**

- A. It's very useful for that.
- B. What else?
- C. I suppose that sometimes
- D. What I mean is
- E. How often do you use your phone when you are out with friends or at a meal with other people?
- F. but not usually
- G. How do you feel if someone interrupts your conversation to use their mobile phone?

H. Can I say that?

I. and things like that

J. In my opinion

A: (1) \_\_\_\_\_

B: OK, so, let me think... Well, I don't like it when people use their mobile phones all the time. (2) \_\_\_\_\_, mobile phones are good for keeping in touch with people ..... and for making arrangements with friends. (3) \_\_\_\_\_ They are good for getting information if you have a smartphone... (4) \_\_\_\_\_

A: (5) \_\_\_\_\_

B: I use my phone a lot, you know ... especially to text people to say when to meet and if I'm going to be late. (6) \_\_\_\_\_ But some people use their phone all the time ... they are addicted ... (7) \_\_\_\_\_ ... Addicted to their phone. Yes, they are addicted to their mobile phone ... and when you speak to them, they always look at their phone and they don't listen to what I'm saying. (8) \_\_\_\_\_, that is not polite. It is very rude and I think it is annoying. Umm ... (9) \_\_\_\_\_ I look at my texts when I am out with friends or at a meal, (10) \_\_\_\_\_. I try to put my phone away ... when I'm eating a meal.

A: OK. Thank you so much. Well done.

**IV)-Read the questionnaire, and complete it. Work in pairs: ask and answer the questions. Do your classmates use communication technology in the same way as you? Keep a note of your partner's answers.**

#### **How do you feel about communication technology?**

1. How often do you use your mobile?

- A. I use it all the time - to call people, to take photos, for the Internet. It's an essential part of my life.
- B. I use it a lot. It's the main way I keep in touch with people.
- C. I use it for important calls when I'm out, but that's all.
- D. I don't have one.

2. How do you feel about the phone?

- A. I really hate calling people. I wait for them to call me.
- B. My phone calls are short. I just say what I need to say.

- C. If I'm not very busy. I enjoy long phone chats with my friends.  
 D. I love my phone. I spend hours every day chatting – I couldn't live without it?
3. How do you feel about computers?
- A. I love them. I spend a lot of my free time on the computer. It's my favourite way to relax.  
 B. They're really useful in my studies, but I'm not really interested in them.  
 C. I use my computer sometimes but I don't like them.  
 D. I'm a bit frightened of computers. I don't know how to use one.
4. What do you think about an e-mail?
- A. It's a wonderful way of keeping in touch with people you don't see very often.  
 B. It's better than phoning because you don't need to talk to the other person.  
 C. It's OK for some situations, but with friends. I prefer to phone.  
 D. I never use it.
5. How often do you use a social network like Facebook on the Internet?
- A. All the time. I love it!  
 B. Quite often.  
 C. I use it sometimes, but I'm not very interested really.  
 D. I've never used it.
6. A new mobile/computer with lots of new features appears in the shops. How do you feel?
- A. Excited – I want one ... now!  
 B. I'll wait and see what other people say about them.  
 C. Oh, no! Not something new to leant about!  
 D. I don't pay any attention. I'm not interested.
7. How do you keep in touch with your friends? Put these in order of most to least importance.
- A. texting                      B. phone                      C. e-mail                      D. letters

## D. READING

**I)-Read about Michelle and Kenji and choose the correct answer.**

### Linking the World

Because of the Internet, people from all over the world can now be friends even if they never meet. Michelle and Kenji are online friends. They tell us how they use their computers.

Michelle, 15, New York, USA



\_\_\_\_\_ two minds, (4) \_\_\_\_\_ over a distance, without the (5) \_\_\_\_\_ of the five known senses.

At some point of time or the other, we all have (6) \_\_\_\_\_ telepathy. Maybe you were thinking of someone you haven't talked to for months and you suddenly get a call from them. Or (7) \_\_\_\_\_ two people are together, they might say the same thing at the same time. These are spontaneous mind-to-mind (8) \_\_\_\_\_ that tend to occur frequently between closely related individuals.

- |    |             |              |                |                   |
|----|-------------|--------------|----------------|-------------------|
| 1. | A. letter   | B. phrase    | C. word        | D. signal         |
| 2. | A. holding  | B. carrying  | C. bringing    | D. getting        |
| 3. | A. between  | B. among     | C. through     | D. across         |
| 4. | A. separate | B. separated | C. separating  | D. be separated   |
| 5. | A. use      | B. using     | C. take        | D. taking         |
| 6. | A. made     | B. brought   | C. experienced | D. taken          |
| 7. | A. where    | B. when      | C. during      | D. since          |
| 8. | A. ways     | B. methods   | C. techniques  | D. communications |

**III)-Read the passage carefully, and then answer the questions below.**

### **Getting In Touch Through The Ages**

Nobody knows who wrote the first letter or when, but we know that 4,000 years ago in Ancient Egypt people carried letters by hand over hundreds of kilometers. Very few people could write, so there were special people, called scribes, who wrote letters for everyone else.

The first stamp didn't appear until 1840 and it cost just one penny. Nowadays one of the original stamps cost €375. Letter writing was so popular in the 1840s that people delivered the post several times a day.

An American company - Remington and Sons - made the first typewriter in 1871. All the letters in the word 'typewriter' were on the top line of the keyboard so that salesmen could demonstrate the machine more easily. Amazingly, the letters are still in the same place on the modern computer keyboard!

In 1875, when Alexander Graham Bell demonstrated a fantastic new invention called the telephone, nobody was very interested in it. The first fax machine appeared

at around the same time, but it was so enormous that no one wanted one - in fact, fax machine didn't become popular for another hundred years.

Then there was the walkie-talkie, a small two-way radio first used by the US army in the 1930s. However, since they weighed around 13.5 kilos, the talking was perhaps easier than the walking! After World War Two, they became popular with police officers.

Nowadays, we can send messages and pictures around the world in a few seconds using computers and mobile phones. It is hard to believe that e-mail was only invented in 1971, and the first text message was sent in 1992. Today we send over a billion text messages around the world every single day, and an incredible thirty-six billion e-mails.

1. How did people deliver letters in Ancient Egypt?

---

2. How much did the first stamp cost?

---

3. How often did they deliver letters in the 1840s?

---

4. How are the letters arranged on a modern computer keyboard?

---

5. When did the first fax machine appear?

---

6. Why was it difficult to walk with the first walkie-talkies?

---

7. When was the first text message?

---

8. How many e-mails do we send every day?

---

**IV)-Read the text, and match the headings (A-F) with paragraphs (1-5). There is one extra heading that you do not need.**

A. Why do "friends" websites seem dangerous?

B. How do "friends" websites work?

C. What's the best advice for people who want to use "friends" websites?

D. Where do Millie's friends live?

E. How can I find “friends” websites?

F. Why are “friends” websites popular?

1. ☐ Millie is 14 years old and lives in Miami. She has 204 friends - and she makes two or three more friends every week. About 20 of her friends also live in Miami. Some go to the same school, and others go to the same music clubs and sports centers. She often sees them. The others live in other cities and other countries: England, Canada, Japan ... She never meets these friends, but she talks to them on the Internet. They are her “MySpace Friends”.
2. ☐ Because of websites like MySpace, Yahoo, 360 and Bebo, people can make friends online. These websites are very popular all over the world, especially with young people. Users have their own homepage. They give information about themselves. They write letters for their webpage, show photos and give opinions. They write about their favourite films, music and TV programmes.
3. ☐ For many young people, a good homepage is an important part of their image. It says: “This is me! I have something to say. These things - and these people - are important in my life.” And these websites are also an easy way to talk to a lot of different people. That is why teenagers like these “friends” websites.
4. ☐ But some people are worried that these websites aren't safe. For example, it is impossible to know that the information on a homepage is true. Perhaps the 14-year- old girl you talk to online is really a 40-year-old man. So here is some advice.
5. ☐ Keep your webpage private. (Only friends can see a private homepage.) Do not put photos of yourself on your homepage. Do not meet people that you only know because of the website. And finally, remember that online friends are fun, but they are not the same as real friends.

**V)-Four people have talked about what they have done in their free time so far this week. Answer the questions below.**

**Nick:** I’ve spent about thirty hours on the Internet so far this week. I'm really into it. I usually go on about 9.00 in the evening after dinner and homework. I maybe stay on until half past eleven in the evening when the rest of my family are all in bed.

**Mi:** I haven't watched any TV so far this week. I don't have a television. I hate television - it’s really bad for you.

**Phong:** I haven't written any letters so far this year. Nobody writes letters these days, do they? I always send e-mails or cards if it's a birthday or something personal.

**Mai:** I don't know how many books I've read so far this year ... too many to count. I've read five books this week. I usually read about four or five in a week. I love reading. If I really like a book, I might read it five or six times.

1. How many hours has Nick spent on the Internet this week?

---

2. When does Nick often go to bed after going on the Net?

---

3. Why does Mi hate television?

---

4. How can Phong communicate with others?

---

5. How many books does Mai read in a week?

---

## E. WRITING

**I)-Complete the answers. Write the letter of the things you should do and the things you shouldn't do in formal e-mail etiquette.**

- A. Use a title, last name, and colon to address someone you don't know well.
- B. Write in complete sentences.
- C. Use correct spelling.
- D. Use emoticons, like ☺.
- E. Use all lower-case letters.
- F. Punctuate carefully.
- G. Date the e-mail.
- H. End with your name.
- I. Close the e-mail as a formal letter, for example, "Thank you so much".
- J. Include abbreviations
- K. Use a first name and comma to address someone you know well.

**Do's:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Don'ts:** \_\_\_\_\_



**II)-Read the following e-mail and circle all the formal e-mail etiquette mistakes. Then, rewrite the formal e-mail and correct the etiquette mistakes.**

Maria, Thanks 4 lunch yesterday. it was GR8 2 C U. let's continue our conversation about the project, maybe Wednesday next week? My place? There's still lots 2 discus. ☺ BTW, please don't forget to bring the info we talked about.

LMK about next week. C U L8R.

Peter

*Your answer:*

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

**III)-Rearrange the following parts to make an email to your teacher to submit your essay. Write the answers (1-10) in each blank. Then write your email in a correct format.**

\_\_\_\_\_ A. I really appreciate if you give some comments on my essay so that I will write better in the near future.

\_\_\_\_\_ B. I have attached my essay on “Communication In the 21<sup>st</sup> century”, which is due by the end of today.

\_\_\_\_\_ C. Best regards, Nguyen Thi Mai

\_\_\_\_\_ D. Subject: English Essay from Nguyen Thi Mai

\_\_\_\_\_ E. Thank you so much.

\_\_\_\_\_ F. To: [teacherLan@school.edu](mailto:teacherLan@school.edu)

\_\_\_\_\_ G. My name is Nguyen Thi Lan, and I am your student from class 8C.

\_\_\_\_\_ H. Dear Ms. Lan,

\_\_\_\_\_ I. From: [MaiNguyen@gmail.com](mailto:MaiNguyen@gmail.com)

\_\_\_\_\_ J. Thank you for allowing me to email it to you instead of turning it in during class.

***Email Homework To Teacher***

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

TEST (UNIT 10)

**I)-Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.**

- |                   |                |              |               |
|-------------------|----------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. A. charity     | B. reality     | C. quality   | D. density    |
| 2. A. curiosity   | B. personality | C. community | D. university |
| 3. A. additive    | B. positive    | C. primitive | D. possessive |
| 4. A. nationality | B. mobility    | C. equality  | D. majority   |
| 5. A. transitive  | B. effective   | C. positive  | D. sensitive  |

**II)-Choose the best answer A, B,C or D to complete the sentences.**

6. A study shows that teenagers use text messaging to communicate with their friends more than \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. to send email    B. to write    C. emailing    D. texting letters
7. The \_\_\_\_\_ communication services, along with chat rooms, continue to be an important part of children's online interactions.  
A. online    B. offline    C. direct    D. phone
8. Email \_\_\_\_\_ are often necessary to join social networking sites, online games, and virtual worlds.  
A. address    B. information    C. senders    D. accounts
9. Email, and chat rooms let children \_\_\_\_\_ with friends and family members.  
A. talk    B. say    C. speak    D. communicate
10. Skype is a voice \_\_\_\_\_ allowing users to talk to others across the world.  
A. hardware    B. software    C. Internet    D. web browser application access
11. Luckily, there are many communication techniques to help overcome \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. foreign    B. culture    C. language    D. sound barriers languages shocks barriers
12. A non-native speaker most likely can recognize the \_\_\_\_\_ the non-verbal communication.  
A. second    B. official    C. sign language    D. body language language language
13. The facial expressions for happiness, sadness, anger, surprise, fear, and disgust are the same across \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. languages    B. cultures    C. habits    D. people
14. Seven of 10 people prefer face-to-face \_\_\_\_\_ when having a date.

- A. code                      B. sign                      C. language                      D. contact
15. We should not \_\_\_\_\_ passwords with anyone.
- A. share                      B. send                      C. bring                      D. lend

**III)-Choose the best answer A, B,C or D to complete the sentences with the correct verb form.**

16. I \_\_\_\_\_ with my aunt when I go to Ha Noi next summer.
- A. stay                      B. staying                      C. stayed                      D. will be staying
17. "When is your math exam?" - "Well, at this time tomorrow, I \_\_\_\_\_ for it."
- A. will sit                      B. will be sitting                      C. sit                      D. is sitting
18. You'll recognize Jenny when you see her. She \_\_\_\_\_ a red hat.
- A. wears                      B. is wearing                      C. will wear                      D. will be wearing
19. Do you spend a lot of time \_\_\_\_\_ to music?
- A. listen                      B. to listen                      C. listening                      D. to be listening
20. How many times have I told you \_\_\_\_\_ football in the street?
- A. not to play                      B. do not play                      C. not playing                      D. will not play
21. I don't mind \_\_\_\_\_ up early in the morning.
- A. get                      B. to get                      C. getting                      D. to getting
22. It was nice of her to let me \_\_\_\_\_ her laptop.
- A. borrow                      B. to borrow                      C. borrowing                      D. to borrowing
23. She is looking forward \_\_\_\_\_ her grandparents again soon.
- A. see                      B. to see                      C. seeing                      D. to seeing

**IV)-Complete the text with the words/phrases below.**

*cyber-bullying*

*homepage*

*keep in touch with*

*online*

*posted*

*view*

I've stopped going on social networks now because I was suffering from (24) \_\_\_\_\_. Somebody was posting aggressive comments on my homepage. I've never (25) \_\_\_\_\_ a nasty comment on anybody's (26) \_\_\_\_\_, and I don't

have any enemies so I think it was a stranger. I don't like the idea that a stranger can (27) \_\_\_\_\_ my photos or my personal information. Now, I prefer to (28) \_\_\_\_\_ my friends by phone. If I want my friends to see photos or videos, I don't need to post them (29) \_\_\_\_\_. I can send them on my phone by using the mobile application — Viber

**V)-Rearrange the sentences in order to make a meaningful conversation, writing the letter (A-F) in each blank. Then practise it with your classmate.**

30. \_\_\_\_\_ A. Nick: When a student stays at home for illnesses, that student can have lessons through the Skype platform.

31. \_\_\_\_\_ B. Nick: Besides language learning, we can have virtual field trips by using Skype to take students to another country or area.

32. \_\_\_\_\_ C. Phuc: Hi, Nick. I think it's a good idea to use Skype in our classroom. Can we present it in the next meeting?

33. \_\_\_\_\_ D. Phuc: I agree with you. Skype can be used to set up short communication sessions with native speakers to improve listening skills and oral communication.

34. \_\_\_\_\_ E. Phuc: It sounds very interesting. I like travelling very much. Teachers can offer help with homework, or give extra lessons to students through Skype.

35. \_\_\_\_\_ F. Nick: Great, Phuc. Teachers and students can benefit from Skype in the classroom, for example foreign language learning.

**VI)-Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.**

E-mail, and chat rooms let children communicate (36) \_\_\_\_\_ friends and family members. They can also allow children to connect with people that they have never (37) \_\_\_\_\_ in person. Knowing a little about each of these communication services can help parents (38) \_\_\_\_\_ children safer while online.

Through e-mail, (39) \_\_\_\_\_ can easily send and receive messages. These messages may also have text, audio, and picture files attached. Signing up for an e-mail account is simple (40) \_\_\_\_\_ most services offer them for free. Sometimes these messages contain viruses, or other inappropriate content, so parents should warn children to be wary of e-mails from (41) \_\_\_\_\_ people.

Chat rooms are online hang-out spots where anyone can talk about (42) \_\_\_\_\_ - current events, books, and other common interests. Users often do not know each other in real life, so it is important that parents keep a close eye on the content of any (43)\_\_\_\_\_.

- |                      |               |               |              |
|----------------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|
| 36. A. to            | B. with       | C. for        | D. through   |
| 37. A. met           | B. gone       | C. asked      | D. called    |
| 38. A. save          | B. protect    | C. surround   | D. keep      |
| 39. A. receivers     | B. messengers | C. users      | D. partners  |
| 40. A. due to        | B. because    | C. because of | D. so        |
| 41. A. known         | B. well-known | C. unknown    | D. unpopular |
| 42. A. every         | B. something  | C. nothing    | D. anything  |
| 43. A. conversations | B. meetings   | C. letters    | D. users     |

VII)-Read the article and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

Telepathy is the ability to communicate information using your mind. Information is transmitted from one mind to another using means other than your well-known perceptual senses. Telepathy ranges from the basic reading of minds to more intense power, such as implanting or disrupting thoughts in other people's minds.

There are a few common reasons why someone becomes telepathic. For example, there are those who are simply born with a sense of knowing. These people talk about seeing spirits. But they tend to suppress their abilities as children and often lose it as adults. Alternatively, a life-changing event may open them up to being telepathic and exploring their gift even further.

Also, there are times when a near-death experience or serious accident can also open someone up and cause a telepathic awakening. And in some cases, hypnosis or healing sessions can help a sixth sense to awaken. Such sessions help with getting energy flowing and causing a shift in awareness and consciousness.

- |  | T                        | F                        |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 44. Telepathy is the ability to communicate information using normal senses. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 45. Telepathy can be found in several forms.                                 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

46. People who often talk about seeing spirits may be telepathic. ☐ ☐
47. Some people may not recognize and develop their telepathic abilities, so they lose these skills. ☐ ☐
48. A near-death experience or serious accident can make a person become telepathic. ☐ ☐
49. We can awaken telepathy by making energy flowing and causing a shift between awareness and sleep. ☐ ☐

VIII)-Read the text, and do the following tasks.

### **Mind-blowing facts about modern communication**

The Internet holds about 5 million terabytes of data. That's about the same as 1 million human brains. According to experts, there are about 2 billion Internet users in the world. 70% of people in developed countries go online, but only 20% of people in developing countries can access to the Internet.

The average Internet user has 25 online accounts and logs in 8 times a day. 30% of Internet users have just 1 password for all their online accounts, and the most common password is "password1". About 55% of users choose words which have some personal meaning, and 15% write down both their password and username.

Many people use Wi-Fi hotspots in public places, such as café, airports and hotels. 46% of them are worried about viruses and hackers. Many people type in personal information while using public Wi-Fi: 22% regularly type in email passwords, 21% log onto Facebook and 8% do online banking, but they are unaware about how to be totally secure.

The first computer virus appeared in 1981. The first virus to affect mobile phones appeared in 2005. And the first anti-virus software came out in 1990. There are now about 6,000 new computer viruses every month.

87% of Internet users go online with their smartphone at least once a day. About 80% keep their smartphone turned on 24-7 and 23% use it during mealtimes.

500,000,000 people in the world have a Facebook account - that's about one in every 13 people. The average user has 130 "friends", and 48% of adults check their

Facebook page as soon as they wake up in the morning. Every 20 minutes. Facebook users around the world upload 2,716,000 photos.

Note: *mind-blowing* (adj) = extremely exciting or surprising (làm cho mê mẩn, sửng sò)

**Task 1: Choose the best answers.**

50. How many Internet users are there in the world?

- A. half a billion                      B. one billion                      C. two billion

51. How many new computer viruses are there every month?

- A. 60                                      B. 600                                      C. 6,000

52. How many people in the world have a Facebook account?

- A. 500,000                              B. 5,000,000                              C. 500,000,000

**Task 2: Match the sentence halves and write the answer in each blank.**

Answer	A	B
_____	53. One in five people	A. have their phone all day, every day.
_____	54. About one third of people	B. have a Facebook account
_____	55. 22 percent of people	C. use their mobile phones while they're eating a meal
_____	56. In 2005,	D. have access to the Internet in developing countries.
_____	57. 500 million people	E. type in their email password on a public computer
_____	58. Four in five people	F. the first mobile phone virus appeared
_____	59. 23 percent of people	G. have only one password for all their online accounts

**Task 3: Match a word/phrase in column A with its definition in column B, and write the answer in each blank.**

Answer	A	B
_____	60. Access to the Internet	A. a programme that inserts itself into a computer system and damage the operation of the computer.



_____	61. Internet user	B. a secret word that you must type in order to use a computer system
_____	62. online account	C. a programme used to protect the main memory of a computer against a virus
_____	63. password	D. an arrangement that a person has with a company to allow him to use the Internet
_____	64. username	E. the range of a wireless (Wi-Fi) network
_____	65. Wi-Fi hotspots	F. the chance of right to use the Internet
_____	66. hacker	G. a person using a computer to change information stored on another computer
_____	67. virus	H. copy programmes or information to the Internet
_____	68. anti-virus software	I. a person that uses the Internet
_____	69. upload	J. a name that you need to type in together with a password before you are allow to use the computer or the Internet

**IX)-Write an email to your teacher about missing assignment, using the clues given.**

Dear Teacher,

70. My name/ Hoang Diem Mi/ I/ your student/ class 8A.

71. I/ would like/ express my appreciation/ all your efforts/ teaching chemistry/ our class.

72. I/ write/ this letter/ apologize/ not submit/ my lab report/ on time.

73. I/ sorry about/ forget/ the deadline/ the report/ due last week.

---

---

74. I/ promise/ this thing/ not happen again.

---

75. I/ hope for/ kind understanding/ and accept/ late submission.

---

Best regards,  
Hoang Diem Mi.

X)-Write an email to your teacher after you miss the lesson and ask to meet the teacher, using the cues given.

Dear Ms. Huong,

76. I/ sorry/ I/ absent/ your Biology class/ yesterday/ because/ I/ have/ a high temperature.

---

---

77. A classmate/ tell me that/ handouts/ the next lab assignment/ give.

---

---

78. We/ submit/ our assignment/ next Friday.

---

79. Can I meet you/ tomorrow's recess/ ask some questions/ the correct way to write it?

---

---

80. I/ look forward/ speak/ you soon.

---

Thank you very much.  
Best regards,  
Pham Van Phong.

# UNIT 11: SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

## A. PHONETICS

I)-Write the words from the box in the correct part of the table, according to the stress pattern.

<i>unacceptable</i>	<i>unachievable</i>	<i>unafraid</i>	<i>uncertain</i>	<i>unambitious</i>
<i>uncomfortable</i>	<i>unaware</i>	<i>unbelievable</i>	<i>unfasten</i>	<i>unemployment</i>
<i>uncommon</i>	<i>uncommunicative</i>	<i>unworried</i>	<i>uncompleted</i>	<i>unpopular</i>
<i>impossible</i>	<i>immeasurable</i>	<i>impersonal</i>	<i>improbable</i>	<i>immortal</i>
<i>immovable</i>	<i>immaterial</i>	<i>imprecision</i>	<i>impurity</i>	<i>impassable</i>

<b>oOo</b>	_____
<b>ooO</b>	_____ _____
<b>oOoo</b>	_____ _____ _____
<b>ooOo</b>	_____
<b>oOooo</b>	_____
<b>ooOoo</b>	_____
<b>ooOooo</b>	_____

II)-Write the opposite of these words, using *un-* or *im-*, and then read the words aloud.

1. attractive \_\_\_\_\_

2. polite \_\_\_\_\_

- |                      |                   |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| 3. practical _____   | 4. natural _____  |
| 5. official _____    | 6. pleasant _____ |
| 7. competitive _____ | 8. lucky _____    |
| 9. necessary _____   | 10. proper _____  |

## B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

### I)-Complete the following sentences with nouns indicating people.

1. A person who paints or draws is a/an \_\_\_\_\_.
2. A person who writes novels is a/an \_\_\_\_\_.
3. A person who is starting to learn something for the first time is a/an \_\_\_\_\_.
4. A person who is in your family who lived a long time before you is a/an \_\_\_\_\_.
5. A person who plays the piano is a/an \_\_\_\_\_.

### II)-Use the correct form of the words given to complete the sentences.

1. Some types of computer games can be \_\_\_\_\_. (educate)
2. Smartphone can vary from day to day due to new \_\_\_\_\_ by different companies in the world. (invent)
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ of a nuclear power plant costs a lot of money. (construct)
4. Space \_\_\_\_\_ brings a bout many benefits to science. (explore)
5. Life is become easy and \_\_\_\_\_ through science and technology. (comfort)
6. Nuclear waste is \_\_\_\_\_ for both human and the environment. (harm)

### III)-Put the verbs in brackets into the correct future tense.

1. Japan (built)\_\_\_\_\_ a robotic moon base by 2020, built by robots, and for robots.
2. China (connect) \_\_\_\_\_ Beijing to London with a high-speed railway soon.

3. Car-makers (design) \_\_\_\_\_ self-driving cars to offer extreme safety and ease of transport.
4. The US military officials say that navy ships (run) \_\_\_\_\_ on 50 percent of biofuels by 2020.
5. We (implant) \_\_\_\_\_ chips in the brain to control devices by the year 2050.
6. With commercial space travel, we (take) \_\_\_\_\_ minerals from the moon at this time in 2030.
7. Universal translation (become) \_\_\_\_\_ common in mobile devices.
8. We (create) \_\_\_\_\_ a synthetic brain that functions like the real one in year 2050.

IV)-Change the sentences into reported speech.

1. The scientist: "Cloning will become more popular in the next century."  
The scientist said that \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Dr. Nelson: "Every home will have at least one robot to perform any boring task."  
Dr.Nelson said that \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Our teacher: "Parents do not allow children to play computer games for a long period of time."  
Our teacher told us that \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The doctor: "Nutrition pills can cause serious side effects."  
The doctor told his patient that \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The physicist: "Nuclear power plants don't require a lot of space."  
The physicist said that \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The politician: "Wrong decisions in Chernobyl caused a big nuclear explosion."  
The politician told the audience that \_\_\_\_\_.

V)-Read the conversation between *Duong* and *Chau*, and then report what Chau told her friend, using reported speech.

**Duong:** You know, Alexander Graham Bell invented the telephone in 1876.

**Chau:** Many people think that the real inventor of the telephone was Antonio Meucci, a poor Italian American.

**Duong:** Really? How could he do that?

**Chau:** He shared a workshop with Bell in the 1860s, and made a “talking telegraph” for his wife, who was ill in bed.

**Duong:** Why didn’t Meucci become the inventor?

**Chau:** He didn't become the inventor because he never took his idea to the US Patent Office.

**Duong:** Why not?

**Chau:** He was too poor to pay the \$250 that he needed.

**Duong:** But Alexander Graham Bell is considered the inventor of the telephone, isn't he?

**Chau:** Alexander Graham Bell took the invention to the Patent Office, and became the inventor.

1. Chau said that \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. She said that \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

### C. SPEAKING

1)-Read the article about Tim Berners-Lee, the inventor of the World Wide Web, give the answers to the questions in the conversation, and practise it in pairs.

**An ordinary life... an amazing idea**

Tim Berners-Lee looks very ordinary. He is about sixty years old and has brown hair. He was born in England but now lives in Massachusetts in the USA. But in 1989 Tim had a very important idea. He invented the World Wide Web (www).

Tim went to school in London. Both his parents worked with computers so it isn't surprising that he loved computers from an early age. When he was eighteen, he left school and went to Oxford University where he studied physics. At Oxford, he became more and more interested in computers, and he made his first computer from an old television. He graduated in 1976 and got a job with a computer company in Dorset, England. In 1989, he went to work in Switzerland where he first had the idea of an international information network linked by computer. He decided to call it the World Wide Web, and he also decided to make his ideas free to everyone - that is why we do not pay to use the Internet.

In 1994, he went to live in the United States where he now works. In 1995, he wrote an article in the New York Times in which he said, "The web is a universe of information and it is for everyone." Today his idea of a web, where people from all over the world can exchange information, is real.

A: Where was Tim Berners-Lee born?

B: (1) \_\_\_\_\_

A: Where does he live now?

B: (2) \_\_\_\_\_

A: What does he look like?

B: (3) \_\_\_\_\_

A: Did he go to school in England?

B: (4) \_\_\_\_\_

A: Why did he love computers from an early age?

B: (5) \_\_\_\_\_

A: Which university did he go to? What did he study there?

B: (6) \_\_\_\_\_

A: What did he become more interested in while he was at Oxford?

B: (7) \_\_\_\_\_

A: When and where did he have the amazing idea of the World Wide Web?

B: (8) \_\_\_\_\_

A: Why don't we have to pay to use the Internet?

B: (9) \_\_\_\_\_

A: What is his idea about the web?

B: (10) \_\_\_\_\_

II)-Rearrange the sentences in order to make a meaningful conversation, writing the number (1-8) in each blank. Then practice it with your classmate.

\_\_\_\_\_ A. Mai: In sports, they can be used to improve muscular strength, so athletes take nutrition pills to have better performance.

\_\_\_\_\_ B. Mi: Consuming nutrition pills has both advantages and disadvantages, so to be safe, it is better to speak to our doctor before taking them.

\_\_\_\_\_ C. Mi: So do I. Nutrition pills can also prevent some diseases, too. For example, mothers-to-be are advised to take folic acid to prevent birth defects.

\_\_\_\_\_ D. Mi: Besides supply of vitamins, nutrition pills can be used together with medicines as a treatment for health conditions.

\_\_\_\_\_ E. Mai: I think nutrition pills are very useful because they can supply us with vitamins and minerals to help protect the body from illnesses. Do you think so, Mi?

\_\_\_\_\_ F. Mi: But athletes cannot use illegal drugs - dope. And nutrition pills are still expensive. Having healthy, nutritious meals are much cheaper.

\_\_\_\_\_ G. Mai: Yeah, pregnant women also have a shortage of vitamin D, so they should take a daily vitamin D supplement of 10 micrograms.

\_\_\_\_\_ H. Mai: I agree with you, Mi. They are less healthy than food, some important nutrients cannot be found in nutrition pills.

#### **D. READING**



I)-Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Computers are helpful (1) \_\_\_\_\_ many ways. First, they are fast. They can work with information even (2) \_\_\_\_\_ quickly than a person. Second, computers can work with a lot of information at the same time. Third, they can (3) \_\_\_\_\_ information for a long time. They do not forget things that the common people do. (4) \_\_\_\_\_, computers are almost always correct. They are not perfect, but they usually do not (5) \_\_\_\_\_ mistakes.

Recently, it is important (6) \_\_\_\_\_ about computers. There are a number of things to learn. Some companies have (7) \_\_\_\_\_ at work. In addition, most universities (8) \_\_\_\_\_ day and night courses in Computer Science. Another way to learn is from a book, or from a friend. After a few hours of practice, you can (9) \_\_\_\_\_ with computers. You may not be an expert, but you can have (10) \_\_\_\_\_.

- |     |            |             |              |                 |
|-----|------------|-------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1.  | A. in      | B. on       | C. at        | D. over         |
| 2.  | A. much    | B. rather   | C. more      | D. less         |
| 3.  | A. hold    | B. carry    | C. stay      | D. keep         |
| 4.  | A. However | B. Moreover | C. Therefore | D. Nevertheless |
| 5.  | A. do      | B. make     | C. have      | D. take         |
| 6.  | A. know    | B. knowing  | C. to know   | D. knew         |
| 7.  | A. classes | B. meetings | C. schools   | D. discussions  |
| 8.  | A. send    | B. offer    | C. bring     | D. spend        |
| 9.  | A. use     | B. make     | C. work      | D. take         |
| 10. | A. fun     | B. funny    | C. enjoy     | D. for fun      |

II)-Read the passage about a smart home, and do the tasks that follow.

### **A Home of The Future**

Dr Michiko Ishiguru describes a typical day at her smart home in Tokyo.

7.00 I wake up. The lights are on and I can hear my favourite music. The curtains open automatically, too. It is cold outside but my bedroom is warm.

7.05 I get up and go to the bathroom. I watch the TV in my intelligent shower- it knows my favourite water temperature.

7.20 My mother and I have breakfast. We have fruit - my intelligent fridge orders food from the Internet. It knows when we need food, like milk or fruit.

7.45 I program my vacuum cleaner, Homebot, to clean the floor. I put tonight's dinner in the intelligent oven. I can check the dinner with my mobile phone.

8.00 I go out. I go to work in my PIVO 2 car - it talks and gives me traffic information. My mother stays with Wakamaru, our intelligent robot. It looks after her and phones me when she is not well.

18.00 I get back home. I ride my exercise bike - it has got a computer. I can choose different routes and today I go cycling in the Alps!

19.00 Dinner is ready in the intelligent oven. Great!

20.00 We watch a film on the home cinema in the living room.

23.30 I go to bed and read an e-book. Then I go to bed.

**Task 1: Match the machines (1-7) with the description (A-H). There is one extra description. Write the answer in each blank.**

_____	1. Wakamaru domestic robot	A. cleans the floor
_____	2. intelligent oven	B. looks after animals
_____	3. exercise bike with computer	C. orders food on the Internet
_____	4. PIVO 2 car	D. controls the temperature of the water and has a TV
_____	5. Homebot	E. cooks and dinner automatically
_____	6. intelligent shower	F. you can do exercise on it
_____	7. intelligent fridge	G. talks to the driver
		H. looks after old people

**Task 2: Read the passage again, and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).**

T F

- |  |                          |                          |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 8. The intelligent shower can show TV programs and choose Michiko's favourite water temperature. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 9. The intelligent fridge asks Michiko and orders food from the Internet.                        | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 10. Her PIVO 2 car drives Michiko to work, and she only sits in her car.                         | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 11. Wakamaru can look after old people.  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 12. Michiko can do exercise and watch film at home.  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

III)-Read the text, and complete the gaps (1-6) with the sentences (A-G). There is one sentence that you do not need.

- A. In 1975, he taught architecture, but he continued to invent puzzles.
- B. He did a number of different jobs and then became a journalist in the 1930s.
- C. He was born in Budapest in 1944.
- D. However, it didn't work because the ink was very thick.
- E. In the 1970s, he worked as an architect and in his spare time he invented a mechanical puzzle.
- F. It quickly became popular all over the world.
- G. It wasn't the only thing he invented.

### **Two great inventors**

László Biró was born in Budapest in 1899. After he left school, he studied medicine at university, but he didn't finish his studies. (1) \_\_\_\_\_. He noticed that newspaper ink dried very quickly on the paper, and put the ink into his fountain pen. (2) \_\_\_\_\_. He and his brother György then invented a new type of pen with a small ball at the end. The new pen worked with the thick ink. (3) \_\_\_\_\_. In 1939, Biró moved to Paris and then to Argentina. Biró invented many other things but the most important was the ball-point pen, or "biro". László Biró died in Buenos Aires in 1985.

Emő Rubik's father was an engineer and his mother was a poet. (4) \_\_\_\_\_. After leaving school, he studied architecture and design at the Technical University. (5) \_\_\_\_\_. Rubik called it the "Magic Cube". It soon became popular in Hungary

and the rest of Europe. (6) \_\_\_\_\_. In the early 1980s, the cube became popular in the USA too, and got a new name: "Rubik's Cube". It is the world's best-selling toy - some people say there are 300 million cubes in the world. Rubik became very rich and went on to invent many more games and puzzles.

IV)-Read the passage carefully, and then answer the questions below.

### **Becky Schroeder, Glo-Sheet**

Becky was only 10 years old when she was attempting to do homework in her mom's car. As it got darker outside, she had the idea that there should be a way to make her paper easier to see in the dark. Becky took matters into her own hands and began playing around with phosphorescent materials, which emitted light but without heat. She then used phosphorescent paint to cover an acrylic board and the Glow-Sheet was created.

In 1974, at the age of 12, Becky became the youngest woman to be granted a U.S. patent for her Glo-Sheet invention.

1. What happened while she was doing homework in her mom's car?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Why did Becky have the idea of the Glo-Sheet?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. What did she do to make the first Glo-Sheet?

\_\_\_\_\_

4. What is one advantage of her invention?

\_\_\_\_\_

5. How old was Becky when she became the youngest woman to be granted a U.S. patent?

\_\_\_\_\_

### **E. WRITING**

Write a paragraph about the topic: "Advantages and disadvantages of smartphone" using the cues given.

There are several advantages of smartphone.

1. Smartphones/ give/ users/ ability/ surf websites/ instead of/ use a desktop or a laptop.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. They/ also have applications/ help us/ create/ edit Microsoft office documents.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Smartphones/ have GPS/ helps/ us/ find/ the place/ we/ look for.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. With a smartphone/ we/ have access/ any email accounts/ Outlook or Gmail/ social networks/ Facebook and Twitter.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Smartphones/ not durable/ especially/ when/ they/ not taken/ good care of.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. It/ very expensive/ buy smartphones/ compared/ other phones.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Smartphones/ only work efficiently/ when/ there/ Internet connection.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. You/ not depend/ smartphones/ for all your work/ but/you/ a compter/ do some tasks.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

TEST (UNIT 11)

**I)-Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.**

1. A. unaffected      B. undrinkable      C. uncountable      D. unsuitable
2. A. unpopular      B. unorganized      C. unfortunate      D. unambitious

- |    |               |              |               |              |
|----|---------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| 3. | A. imperfect  | B. immature  | C. immobile   | D. immoral   |
| 4. | A. translator | B. director  | C. editor     | D. spectator |
| 5. | A. consumer   | B. performer | C. shopkeeper | D. believer  |

**II)-Find one word that does not belong to each group.**

- |     |               |              |                 |                |
|-----|---------------|--------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 6.  | A. cloning    | B. genetics  | C. cyberspace   | D. life span   |
| 7.  | A. rocket     | B. spaceship | C. astronaut    | D. ship        |
| 8.  | A. driverless | B. computer  | C. online       | D. websites    |
| 9.  | A. technician | B. scientist | C. technologist | D. musician    |
| 10. | A. advantage  | B. drawback  | C. benefit      | D. achievement |

**III)-Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.**

11. Facebook was built on the \_\_\_\_\_ of earlier social network sites like MySpace and Bebo.  
A. succeed      B. successful      C. successfully      D. success
12. It is thought that driverless cars will transform the way we move \_\_\_\_\_ cities in the future.  
A. around      B. away      C. along      D. ahead
13. Little Pascal \_\_\_\_\_ a mechanical calculator which could do additions or subtractions very quickly  
A. discovered      B. found      C. found out      D. invented
14. Robots save workers from \_\_\_\_\_ dangerous tasks.  
A. making      B. having      C. performing      D. carrying
15. Many people believe that robots have made workers jobless, \_\_\_\_\_ that is not necessarily true  
A. but      B. and      C. so      D. or
16. Recent \_\_\_\_\_ developments have made robots more user-friendly, and intelligent.  
A. science      B. scientist      C. scientific      D. scientifically
17. Teenagers spend most of their time playing computer game; \_\_\_\_\_, they lose their interests in daily activities.  
A. moreover      B. so      C. however      D. as a result

18. Science and technology have \_\_\_\_\_ the life safe, secure and comfortable.
- A. transformed    B. made    C. done    D. changed
19. Terrorists are using modern technology \_\_\_\_\_ their destructive work.
- A. about    B. at    C. for    D. with
20. With the advance of the science and technology, our life changes greatly in various \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. scenes    B. fields    C. sights    D. regions

**IV)-Use the correct form of the words given to complete the sentences.**

21. Due to the \_\_\_\_\_ in the science and technology, impossible things have become possible. (develop)
22. Robots increase worker \_\_\_\_\_ by preventing accident since humans are not performing \_\_\_\_\_ jobs.(safe-risk)
23. As a \_\_\_\_\_ (science), Professor Tran Dai Nghia set an example as a true \_\_\_\_\_ (research) who devoted himself to the \_\_\_\_\_ (science) career.
24. Robots save worker from performing \_\_\_\_\_ tasks. (danger)
25. One disadvantage of robots is its high cost for the \_\_\_\_\_. (produce)
26. Robots are being used in both \_\_\_\_\_ manufacturing and the \_\_\_\_\_ field. (industry – medicine)
27. There is no \_\_\_\_\_ reason why Japan will not be able to make progress in robotics. (technology)
28. The key to Youtube's success is the \_\_\_\_\_ for anyone from anywhere in the world to broadcast themselves for free. (able)

**V)-Complete the following sentences with noun indicating people.**

29. A person who runs, especially in competition, is a \_\_\_\_\_.
30. A person who manages a home and raises children is a \_\_\_\_\_.
31. A person who comes from another country is a \_\_\_\_\_.

32. A person whose job is to produce computer programmes is a \_\_\_\_\_.

33. A person who does something as a hobby is a \_\_\_\_\_.

VI)-Use the correct form of the words in brackets to complete the following passage.

**Le Van Thiem - the founder of contemporary mathematics in Viet Nam**

Le Van Thiem was bom in 1918 in Ha Tinh, Viet Nam, in an intellectual family. He was the (34. young) \_\_\_\_\_ of 13 brothers and sisters. He was the first Vietnamese to earn a “modem” doctoral degree. In 1939, after passing the final examinations with excellent marks, Le Van Thiem was offered a scholarship to study in Paris, France. His (35. contribute) \_\_\_\_\_ in Paris placed him among the best young (36. research) \_\_\_\_\_ in mathematics in the 1940s.

In 1949, he returned to Viet Nam to take part in our country's struggle for (37. independent) \_\_\_\_\_. In 1951, he founded a teacher training college and a college of fundamental sciences in Viet Bac with the aim of providing the country with qualified teachers and (38. technique)\_\_\_\_\_.

After 1954, he was the first director of Viet Nam Institute of Mathematics, the first Headmaster of Ha Noi National University of Education, and Ha Noi University of Science. Together with other (39. mathematics) \_\_\_\_\_, such as Hoang Tuy, Ta Quang Buu, Professor Le Van Thiem founded two Vietnamese (40. mathematics) \_\_\_\_\_ research journals in foreign languages, and he was also one of the (41.found) \_\_\_\_\_ of the journal “Mathematics and Youth”. He died in 1991 in Ho Chi Minh City.

VII)-Change the following sentences into reported speech, using the words given in brackets.

42. “We are learning more about our universe.” (Our teacher said)

\_\_\_\_\_

43. “Scientists have made various applications in long distance communication.” (Dr. Nelson said)

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



44. "Science is a good and useful servant but it is a bad destructive master." (Our Chemistry teacher told us)

---

---

45. "Space tourism will broaden our knowledge of space." (Our headmaster said)

---

---

46. "During the time in Paris in 1946, Uncle Ho attracted several Vietnamese scientists to return to the country." (Our History teacher told us)

---

---

47. "Professor Le Van Thiem believed in the importance of education and science, so he founded a teacher training college and a college of fundamental science." (Our Math teacher said)

---

---

---

VIII)-Rearrange the sentences in order to make a meaningful conversation, writing the letter (A-J) in each blank. Then practise it with your classmate.

48. \_\_\_\_\_ A. Nick: That's right. Science and technology have made the world become a global village. But, let's look into disadvantages. How about your opinion?

49. \_\_\_\_\_ B. Duong: I agree with you. Now we have express trains, jet planes, and rockets.

50. \_\_\_\_\_ C. Duong: In addition to that, some children are playing computer games all day. They stop playing outside, so they may have some illnesses. They may become very fat, or get high blood pressure.

51. \_\_\_\_\_ D. Duong: I think science and technology are greatly changing our lives in many fields.

52. \_\_\_\_\_ E. Duong: I think all of us will live longer and healthier. Sitting at home, we can do many things, shopping, booking tickets, chatting with friends all over the world through social networks.
53. \_\_\_\_\_ F. Duong: I think modern technology has made people become lazier. Many people spend so much time on various hi-tech appliances around them.
54. \_\_\_\_\_ G. Nick: I think so. Technology has brought about a revolution in the modern world.
55. \_\_\_\_\_ H. Nick: In my opinion, we have to use technology in a good way in order to progress and lead a healthy life.
56. \_\_\_\_\_ I. Nick: Besides transportation, we have made progress in medicine, too. Almost all our organs can be transplanted, such as heart, liver, kidney, lungs, and so on.
57. \_\_\_\_\_ J. Nick: Young people spend too much time online with social networks.
- IX)-Read the article and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

### **Global Positioning Systems**

If you've ever said, "I wish I knew where I was going" or "If only there were some ways to find this address," then it may be time to consider buying yourself a Global Positioning Systems, or GPS.

Let's look at some of the uses of GPS device. Maybe you travel a lot by car and cannot look at a paper map to find your way around. There is a GPS for cars that speaks to you and tells you exactly how to get to your destination. Maybe you're a golfer who has lost his golf ball and you need to find it on the field. There's a GPS for this. You're a runner and want to track your speed, distance, and the courses you run. Well, there's a GPS for this, too.

What kinds of GPS devices are there? Well, GPS devices come in all kinds of shapes and sizes, and are available in a variety of prices. Some are small and can fit into a pocket, and others are waterproof. And for people who don't like to carry anything extra with them, GPS systems are also available on smart phones.

- |  |                          |                          |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|
|  | T                        | F                        |
| 58. GPS is used to find out where you are going. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

- |   |                          |                          |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 59. GPS cannot replace a paper map.   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 60. GPS can tell you how to get to a place while you are driving.               | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 61. A GPS device can look for a small moving item.                              | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 62. A GPS device can track your speed, distance but not the directions you run. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 63. GPS devices can be in all kinds of shapes and sizes.                        | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 64. You cannot use a GPS device in water.                                       | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 65. There are also GPS devices for smart phones.                                | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

X)-Read the passage carefully, and then answer the questions below.

### **Tran Dai Nghia (1913-1997) - The Buddha of Guns**

Professor, Academician Tran Dai Nghia is a heroic Scientist of Vietnamese intellectuals. In 1935, the young man Pham Quang Le, his real name, had a scholarship to study in France. He tried to take 6 college degrees and certificates of the most famous universities of France. Unlike the others, Pham Quang Le had a clear purpose when studying abroad. He studied the science of making weapons to serve the country's independence.

The meeting between him and President Ho Chi Minh in Paris in 1946 changed the life of Pham Quang Le. In 1946, under the requirements of the French war, he was assigned as Head of Military Department by Uncle Ho with the responsibility of researching, manufacturing weapons for our soldiers to fight the enemy. Uncle Ho said, "This is the good thing. So from now on your name is Tran Dai Nghia..."

In difficult conditions, Professor Tran Dai Nghia and his comrades made successfully bazookas, recoilless canons (SKZ), and flying bombs. In praise of the success of bazookas, when General Vo Nguyen Giap saw Mr. Tran Dai Nghia as a gentle and quiet engineer. General called him "The Buddha of guns".

In short, Professor Tran Dai Nghia contributed his entire life for the country, for the people.

66. What was the purpose of his study when studying abroad?

67. What did Pham Quang Le try to study when he was in France?

---

68. Why did Uncle Ho change his name?

---

69. Why did General Vo Nguyen Giap call him “The Buddha of guns”?

---

70. What was one of his great achievements?

---

XI)-Use the prompts given to make sentences about Tim Berners-Lee.

71. Tim Berners-Lee/ born/ England.

---

72. go to school/ London.

---

73. when/ 18/ go to Oxford University.

---

74. at university/ become/ interested in computers.

---

75. Oxford/ make/ his first computer/ a television.

---

76. graduate/ 1976.

---

77. get a job/ computer company/ England.

---

78. 1989/ work/ software engineer at CERN/ large physics laboratory/ Switzerland.

---

---

79. scientists/ come/ all over/ world/ and/ have difficulty/ share/ information.

---

---

80. he/ think/ see a way/ solve/ problem/ millions of computers/ connected together/  
the Net.

---

---

## UNIT 12: LIFE ON OTHER PLANETS

### A. PHONETIC

**I)-Write the words from the box in the correct part of the table, according to the stress.**

<i>powerful</i>	<i>painful</i>	<i>expressionless</i>	<i>skillful</i>	<i>fearless</i>
<i>spotless</i>	<i>wonderful</i>	<i>harmful</i>	<i>thoughtful</i>	<i>cloudless</i>
<i>directionless</i>	<i>disgraceful</i>	<i>bottomless</i>	<i>delightful</i>	<i>leaderless</i>
<i>breathless</i>	<i>successful</i>	<i>tasteless</i>	<i>faithful</i>	<i>effortless</i>
<i>motionless</i>	<i>respectful</i>	<i>uneventful</i>	<i>resourceful</i>	<i>effortless</i>

<b>Oo</b>	_____
	_____
<b>Ooo</b>	_____
	_____
<b>oOo</b>	_____
	_____
<b>oOoo</b>	_____
	_____
<b>ooOo</b>	_____
	_____

**I)-Complete the sentences, using the suffix -ful or -less with the words given in brackets. Practise saying the sentences.**

- The man does not take care. He is \_\_\_\_\_. (care)
- The picture has many colours. It is very \_\_\_\_\_. (colour)
- We enjoyed the party. It was very \_\_\_\_\_. (joy)
- She did not show any fear. She was \_\_\_\_\_. (fear)
- The pan is very hot. She must be \_\_\_\_\_. (care)

6. He does not have any friends. He is \_\_\_\_\_. (friend)
7. He always has a big smile. He is always \_\_\_\_\_. (cheer)
8. Now she is very tired, because she spent a \_\_\_\_\_ night. (rest)
9. That old man has a bad memory. He is \_\_\_\_\_. (forget)
10. He does not care about his actions. He is often \_\_\_\_\_. (thought)
11. We have made a lot of progress this school year. We have had another \_\_\_\_\_ year. (success)
12. You should throw this pen away. It is \_\_\_\_\_. (use)

## B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

**I)-Match a word/ phrase in column A with its definition in column B, writing the answer in each blank.**

Answer	A	B
_____	1. alien (n)	A. a large body in space that moves around the sun
_____	2. spaceship (n)	B. Unidentified Flying Object
_____	3. solar system (n)	C. having no weight, especially when travelling in space
_____	4. galaxy (n)	D. a creature that comes from another planet
_____	5. UFO	E. a large group of stars and planets in outer space
_____	6. planet (n)	F. a vehicle in which people can travel in space
_____	7. orbit	G. a person who travels in a spaceship
_____	8. satellite (n)	H. the sun and the planets that move around it
_____	9. astronaut (n)	I. a man-made object that has been sent into space and that moves around a planet
_____	10. weightless (adj)	J. the path taken by something (a planet, a satellite, etc.) going round something else in space

II)-Fill in each blank of the passage with the correct word from the box.

<i>ocean</i>	<i>life</i>	<i>clouds</i>	<i>system</i>
<i>difference</i>	<i>conditions</i>	<i>kind</i>	<i>atmosphere</i>

### Can there be Life in the Environment of Titan?

Titan is Saturn's largest moon and the second largest in the solar (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (after Ganymede of Jupiter). It is the only moon in the solar system with clouds and a dense, planet-like (2) \_\_\_\_\_. Scientists believe that (3) \_\_\_\_\_ on Titan are similar to Earth's early years. The main (4) \_\_\_\_\_ is that, because it is closer to the sun, Earth has always been warmer. Titan's atmosphere is very cold, from -200 degrees to -179 degrees Celsius!

In the atmosphere there are layers of (5) \_\_\_\_\_ composed of complex molecules such as methane. There also may be an (6) \_\_\_\_\_ of methane, or perhaps a liquid water layer inside the moon. This type of environment, except for the cold, is the (7) \_\_\_\_\_ of environment in which scientists think (8) \_\_\_\_\_ began.

III)-Complete the conversation, using the words or phrases given.

<i>had masks on their faces</i>	<i>came out</i>	<i>wanted to run away</i>
<i>came up to me</i>		<i>opened</i>

**Tony:** Guess what just happened?

**Sally:** What?

**Tony:** I was walking down Ashley Road when I saw two lights. They were on a huge silver thing that was blocking the street. Then a door (1) \_\_\_\_\_ and lot of men (2) \_\_\_\_\_. They were wearing silver and (3) \_\_\_\_\_. The tallest one (4) \_\_\_\_\_ and said, "Why are you here?" I said, "I'm here because I live around here." But he asked me again, "Why are you here?" (5) \_\_\_\_\_, but the other ones blocked my path. The tall one said, "Send him away. There are not many more streets left and we don't have much time."

**Harry:** To do what? Catch people like you? What's this all about? Aliens?

**Tony:** Maybe. They're still out there. Why don't you check?



(A minute later)

**Harry:** Brilliant, Tony. Your aliens are people from the gas company, looking for a gas leak.

**Tony:** Got you!

*Notes:*

- leak (n) = lỗ thủng, khe hở

- (1) Got you! = Tôi hiểu bạn muốn nói gì!

IV)-Fill in each blank in the following passage, using the words given in the box.

<i>believe</i>	<i>in</i>	<i>nearest</i>	<i>billion</i>	<i>intelligent</i>
<i>Earth</i>	<i>spaceship</i>	<i>numbers</i>	<i>ordinary</i>	<i>universe</i>

Our planet (1) \_\_\_\_\_ is revolving around the sun, which is a fairly small and (2) \_\_\_\_\_ star. There are about 250 (3) \_\_\_\_\_ stars in our galaxy, and billions of galaxies in the (4) \_\_\_\_\_. In recent years, scientists have wondered about the possibility of (5) \_\_\_\_\_ life forms on the other planets.

Some scientists (6) \_\_\_\_\_ that there may be large (7) \_\_\_\_\_ of stars with their own planets. It is almost impossible to reach the stars (8) \_\_\_\_\_ the Milky Way galaxy. It would take the fastest Earth (9) \_\_\_\_\_ about 40,000 years to reach the (10) \_\_\_\_\_ star.

V)-Read the conversation between Mai and Dr. Nelson, and finish the following sentences.

**Mai:** When did the International Space Station start working, Dr. Nelson?

**Dr. Nelson:** An American astronaut and two Russian cosmonauts started working on the ISS on November 2, 2000.

**Mai:** How many people have worked there?

**Dr. Nelson:** More than 220 people from more than a dozen countries have worked there.

**Mai:** How long and how heavy is the ISS?

**Dr. Nelson:** The station is 100 meters long and it weighs about 420 tons.

**Mai:** Is there anyone living on the space station all the time?

**Dr. Nelson:** There has always been a crew of three to six people on board all the time.

1. Mai asked Dr. Nelson \_\_\_\_\_ the International Space Station \_\_\_\_\_ working.

2. Dr. Nelson answered that an American astronaut and two Russian cosmonauts \_\_\_\_\_ working on the ISS on November 2, 2000.

3. Mai wanted \_\_\_\_\_ how many people \_\_\_\_\_ there.

4. Dr. Nelson \_\_\_\_\_ that more than 220 people from more than a dozen countries \_\_\_\_\_ there.

5. Mai asked how long and how heavy \_\_\_\_\_.

6. Dr. Nelson said that the station \_\_\_\_\_ 100 meters long and \_\_\_\_\_ about 420 tons.

7. Mai asked \_\_\_\_\_ there \_\_\_\_\_ anyone living on the space station all the time.

8. Dr. Nelson told Mai that \_\_\_\_\_ crew of three to six people on board all the time.

VI)-Rewrite the sentences in reported speech.

1. Nhi: Space offers unique pleasures including the view and zero gravity activities.

Nhi said \_\_\_\_\_

2. Duong: Space travel is risky and expensive.

Duong thought that \_\_\_\_\_

3. Mai: Will Enceladus provide a habitable environment for life?

Mai asked \_\_\_\_\_

4. Nick: When did the flyby take place?

Nick asked \_\_\_\_\_

5. Mi: What do scientists discover from the photos of Saturn's moon - Enceladus?

Mi asked \_\_\_\_\_

### C. SPEAKING

I)-Fill in each blank with the correct statement to complete the conversation between Dr. Nelson and Duong about accommodation outside the Earth.

**A.** With solar power, we might produce oxygen and water from the gases in the upper atmosphere of Venus. But we have to bring food from the Earth for the first period.

**B.** The surface temperature is nearly 500 degrees centigrade, and the pressure is 92 times more than that of the Earth. Actually, the spaceship is kept 50 kilometers above the surface of Venus, and we will not have any of these problems.

**C.** You know, scientists are looking for places where we can live outside the Earth.

III)-Read the following passages, and decide if the sentences are T (True) or F (False). Correct the false ones.

### ***Passage 1***

Robert Hammond was driving home one night with his wife Judy when their car suddenly stopped. He turned the key but the car did not start. Judy looked at her watch. It was one minute before midnight and there were no other cars on the road. They were discussing what to do when they saw a bright light in the sky.

Robert opened the car door. Judy told him to stay in the car but he didn't listen. She watched her husband walk towards the light. He walked until he was under the light and stopped. Then suddenly the light disappeared and it was dark. It was also silent again. At the same time, the car started again. Judy looked at her watch again. It was still one minute to midnight. She waited for her husband but he didn't return. She called his name but there was no reply. Robert Hammond disappeared and his wife Judy never saw him again.

### ***Passage 2***

Mary was studying late one night for her final exams when she fell asleep in front of her computer. She started to have a really strange dream. She was wearing a white dress and she was lying on a bed. She tried to move but she couldn't. She looked up and saw two alien faces looking at her. They had big grey heads with large black eyes.

Then another alien arrived. He was carrying a large machine. He put something over her mouth. When Mary woke up, she was not in front of her computer. She was in her bed. Then she got up and looked into the mirror. Her two front teeth were missing.

1. Robert and Judy were on a busy road. T/F \_\_\_\_\_

2. They saw a bright white light in the night sky. T/F \_\_\_\_\_
3. Robert got out of the car. T/F \_\_\_\_\_
4. Robert's encounter lasted for twenty minutes. T/F \_\_\_\_\_
5. Mary went to bed because she was tired. T/F \_\_\_\_\_
6. In her dream, she saw three aliens. T/F \_\_\_\_\_
7. The aliens put something over her hand. T/F \_\_\_\_\_
8. Her mother woke her up the next morning. T/F \_\_\_\_\_

IV)-Read the story, and match the sentence halves. Write the answer in each blank.

### **A New Home**

The president of the planet Trojan was standing in front of her palace. She spoke to all the people. "People of Trojan!" she said. "I have some bad news. Another planet is coming towards us. One hundred years from now, the other planet is going to hit us and destroy us. There is nothing we can do."

The Trojan people were very frightened. The president said more.

"Don't worry. We have a plan. We're going to build spaceships - the biggest spaceships in the history of universe. Each spaceship is going to carry 10,000 people - and we are going to build 20,000 spaceships! In this way, we can take every Trojan man, woman, and child to a safe place - before the other planet hits us"

The people asked, "Where? Where is this safe place?"

The president said, "There is another planet, very far from here. It is a planet where Trojan people can live. The air is like our air; the water is like our water, and there is room for us. The name of this planet is Earth!"

The next day, the people of Trojan started to build the spaceships. It took them a very long time - more than fifteen years - to build the first 1,000 spaceships. And after fifty years, 5,000 spaceships were ready. And finally, all the 20,000 spaceships were ready. The spaceships were round, like huge yellow footballs - so big that 10,000 Trojans could go inside each one.

Then, one day, the people of Trojan said goodbye to their borne. They got into the spaceships. And, one by one, the spaceships took off. And the Trojans began the journey to their new home.

20 years later, the spaceships landed on the planet Earth.

- |  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| _____ 1. Another planet was going to...        | A. into each spaceship.        |
| _____ 2. The Trojan people planned...          | B. 20,000 very big spaceships. |
| _____ 3. The Trojan people built...            | C. hit the planet Trojan.      |
| _____ 4. 10,000 Trojan people went...          | D. on the planet Earth.        |
| _____ 5. After twenty years, the Trojan people | E. to travel to Earth.         |
- landed ...

V)-Read the passage and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

The International Space Station - the manned satellite - bus constantly circled the Earth in low orbit up to now. Since the first permanent crew moved in on 2 November 2000, 220 people representing 17 countries have come and gone. Most of those astronauts have been Americans on the space shuttle flights to deliver the equipment, food and other supplies.

Russia has sent the second largest number of people, with Canada and Japan tied for third. At least one American and one Russian have been on board at all times.

The ISS orbits 240 miles above the planet at 17,150 mph and can often be seen by the naked eye. The complex has grown from three to 13 rooms and the current structure has a mass of nearly 450 tons. More than 26,500 meals have been served. 1,760 experiments carried out and 189 spacewalks undertaken, according to NASA. The 189 spacewalks have been undertaken to build and maintain the space station.

The most important experiment, according to Commander Scott Kelly, was about keeping humans alive in space.

NASA administrator, Charles Bolden, called the 15-year milestone in 2015 “a remarkable moment”. He added, “It has taught us about what's possible when tens of thousands of people across 15 countries work together with the shared goals.”

T F

1. The International Space Station started working on 2 November 2000. ☐ ☐
2. People of different nationalities have worked on the ISS. ☐ ☐
3. American astronauts flew on the space shuttles to bring supplies to the ISS. ☐ ☐
4. The ISS orbits high above the Earth and can only be seen through telescopes. ☐ ☐
5. The space station travels around the Earth at the speed of light. ☐ ☐
6. The astronauts have to walk outside space to maintain the space station. ☐ ☐
7. The most important experiment done by the ISS was about keeping humans lively in space. ☐ ☐
8. The achievements of the ISS are to make thousands of people in many countries collaborate with the same purposes. ☐ ☐

VI)-Read the passage, and do the tasks that follow.

The New Horizons - a NASA probe - went past Pluto in summer 2015. Pluto was discovered by Clyde Tombaugh - an American astronomer - in 1930 as the ninth planet in the solar system. However, in January 19, 2006, Pluto was regarded as a dwarf planet. In the solar system, there are the inner rocky planets, such as the Earth, Mars, Venus and Mercury, and the outer gas giants, like Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus and Neptune. Pluto and its largest moon, Charon, belong to a third category known as "ice dwarfs". They have solid surfaces but, unlike the other planets, their mass is icy material.

The probe traveled more than 3.6 billion miles to take the photos. The new image shows a clear view of Pluto's surface, and it is covered with wide smooth areas, and mountains. Huge mountains are made of water ice. Scientists hope that information from the New Horizons will prove that there might be a lot of water on Pluto. Finding water on another world is important because water is considered one of the key materials to life.

Besides Charon, Pluto has four other small moons: Styx, Nix, Kerberos, and Hydra.

The New Horizon's mission makes the United States the first nation to send a space probe to every planet from Mercury to Pluto.

**Task 1: Match a word in column A with its definition in column B, writing the answer in each blank.**

Answer	A	B
_____	1. probe	A. a scientist who studies universe
_____	2. astronomer	B. a group of people or things that are similar to each other
_____	3. dwarf	C. a small spacecraft with no one travelling in it
_____	4. category	D. very important
_____	5. key	E. someone or something that is smaller than the usual size

**Task 2: Read the passage again, and then answer the following questions**

6. When was Pluto discovered?

---

7. Why was Pluto not considered a planet but a dwarf planet?

---

8. How far did the New Horizons travel to take the photos of Pluto?

---

9. Why do scientists hope that there might be a lot of water on Pluto?

---

10. Why was the mission to Pluto important to the United States?

---

## **E. WRITING**

1)-Rewrite the sentences in reported speech.

1. "Every weekend, the astronauts can have private video-conferences with their families on the Earth," Dr. Nelson said.

Dr. Nelson said \_\_\_\_\_

2. "Have the astronauts ever forgotten anything from the Earth?" Nick asked his teacher.

Nick asked his teacher. \_\_\_\_\_

3. "The astronauts on the ISS use a 3-D printer on board to print certain objects," the teacher answered Nick.

The teacher told Nick \_\_\_\_\_

4. "Where can we look for life?" Mai asked Dr. Nelson.

Mai asked Dr. Nelson \_\_\_\_\_

5. "Ganymede, the largest moon of Jupiter, has a large salt water ocean," the teacher said.

The teacher said \_\_\_\_\_

6. "Does Mars have ice under its surface?" Mi asked the teacher.

Mi asked the teacher \_\_\_\_\_

II)-Write meaningful sentences about the appearance of aliens based on the words or phrases given, using "may/might".

1. Aliens/ small creatures/ made of chitin/ an insect skeletal protein.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. They/ thick skin/ minimize/ evaporation/ and/ conserve water.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. They/ 18 pairs/ legs/ sucker-like feet.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. They/be short creatures/ thick legs/ support/ their bodies/ against/ strong gravity.

\_\_\_\_\_



---

5. They/ absorb/ oxygen/ their skin.

---

6. They/ use antennas/ collect information.

---

7. They/ intelligent robots/ fly/ through/ air.

---

8. They/ look like/ jellyfish/ which/ communicate/ through flashes/ light

---

TEST (UNIT 12)

I)-Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- |    |                |                |                |               |
|----|----------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. | A. alien       | B. but         | C. because     | D. because of |
| 2. | A. exploration | B. accommodate | C. environment | D. experience |
| 3. | A. forgetful   | B. wonderful   | C. beautiful   | D. waterless  |
| 4. | A. sighting    | B. climate     | C. attempt     | D. system     |
| 5. | A. astronaut   | B. Mercury     | C. Jupiter     | D. computer   |

II)-Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

6. An astronaut has to wear a spacesuit \_\_\_\_\_ it may be very cold in space.  
A. so                      B. but                      C. because                      D. because of
7. The UFO landed on a \_\_\_\_\_ area.  
A. grass                      B. grassy                      C. grassed                      D. grassing
8. Scientists have been trying to find \_\_\_\_\_ of aliens.  
A. amounts                      B. records                      C. traces                      D. sights
9. There have been many UFO \_\_\_\_\_ reported.  
A. sights                      B. signs                      C. signals                      D. sightings
10. Mars is called the Red Planet due to its \_\_\_\_\_ surface.

A. red                      B. redder                      C. reddest                      D. reddish

11. In the mid-19<sup>th</sup> century, scientists discovered that Mars had some similarities \_\_\_\_\_ Earth.

A. to                      B. with                      C. of                      D. from

12. Neptune is bright blue \_\_\_\_\_ it is named after the Roman God of the sea.

A. because                      B. but  
C. so                      D. or

13. There is a lot of interest in doing experiments in the \_\_\_\_\_ conditions.

A. weigh                      B. weighing                      C. weight                      D. weightless

14. Titan, one of Saturn's \_\_\_\_\_, has a thick atmosphere.

A. satellite                      B. spaceships                      C. moons                      D. comets

15. Scientists believe that Mars also \_\_\_\_\_ seasons just as the Earth does.

A. spends                      B. experiences                      C. experiments                      D. takes

III)-Fill in each blank in the following sentences with words ending in -ful or -less.

16. Bob is full of hope. He is \_\_\_\_\_ of receiving a job offer.

17. Water is \_\_\_\_\_. It has no colour.

18. He lost everything, and finally he sold his house. He became \_\_\_\_\_.

19. Mary's arm is full of dirty clothes. Mary brought in a/an \_\_\_\_\_ of dirty clothes.

20. We ate a/an \_\_\_\_\_ meal in the new Japanese restaurant. It was full of wonder.

21. Without a thought, Mi really hurt Duong's feeling with that comment. She is sometimes \_\_\_\_\_.

IV)-Rearrange the sentences in order to make a meaningful conversation, writing the letter (A-J) in each blank. Then practise it with your classmate.

22. \_\_\_\_\_ A. Mai: If we are lucky, we may live on another planet like Kepler-452b in the near future.

23. \_\_\_\_\_ B. Mai: And the greenhouse effect might indicate life on it.

24. \_\_\_\_\_ C. Nick: Mai, recently scientists from NASA have announced the discovery of Kepler-452b, the most Earthlike planet.
25. \_\_\_\_\_ D. Nick: I think so. Scientists may have to invent a special spaceship to travel over 1,400 light years - to take people from the Earth to this new planet.
26. \_\_\_\_\_ E. Nick: Kepler-452b is about 60 percent larger than the Earth. The orbit is nearly the same, and its year is about 20 days longer than the Earth's.
27. \_\_\_\_\_ F. Nick: Yes, there are. The heat from its sun might cause the new planet to lose its oceans, but there might be lakes, pools and rivers left. Scientists think that the new planet might soon experience a greenhouse effect.
28. \_\_\_\_\_ G. Mai: Really? Are you kidding? Does it have the same size as the Earth?
29. \_\_\_\_\_ H. Nick: The planet is 5 percent farther from its parent star Kepler-452 than Earth is from the Sun. So it is a little bit hotter on the new planet
30. \_\_\_\_\_ I. Mai: How about its temperatures? Is it too hot or too cold to live on the new planet?
31. \_\_\_\_\_ J. Mai: Maybe the temperatures are OK. Are there any signs of life on it Nick?

V)-Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Long ago a lot of people (32) \_\_\_\_\_ the moon was a god. Other people thought it was just a light in the sky. And others thought it was a big (33) \_\_\_\_\_ of cheese!

The telescopes were made, and men saw that the moon was really another world. They Wondered (34) \_\_\_\_\_ it was like. They dreamed of going there. On July 20, 1969, that dream came (35) \_\_\_\_\_. Two American astronauts landed on the moon. (36) \_\_\_\_\_ names were Neil Armstrong and Edwin Aldrin.

The first thing the men found was that the moon is covered (37) \_\_\_\_\_ dust. The dust is so thick that the men left (38) \_\_\_\_\_ where they walked. Those were the first marks a living thing had ever made on the moon. And they could (39) \_\_\_\_\_ there for years and years. There is no wind or rain to wipe them off. The two men (40) \_\_\_\_\_ rocks to bring back to Earth for study. They dug up dirt to

bring back. They set up machines to find out things people wanted to know. Then they were off on their long trip (41) \_\_\_\_\_ the earth.

- |     |                 |               |               |           |
|-----|-----------------|---------------|---------------|-----------|
| 32. | A. thought      | B. guessed    | C. told       | D. said   |
| 33. | A. form         | B. stone      | C. ball       | D. round  |
| 34. | A. how          | B. which      | C. that       | D. what   |
| 35. | A. real         | B. true       | C. unreal     | D. untrue |
| 36. | A. Their        | B. His        | C. Its        | D. Theirs |
| 37. | A. by           | B. for        | C. to         | D. with   |
| 38. | A. fingerprints | B. footprints | C. handprints | D. prints |
| 39. | A. go           | B. remain     | C. put        | D. run    |
| 40. | A. got up       | B. gave up    | C. picked up  | D. set up |
| 41. | A. back to      | B. from to    | C. into       | D. onto   |

VI)-Read the following passage carefully, then write True (T) or False (F) for each statement.

People have been talked about UFOs for ages. Millions of normal people keep saying that they were caught and taken into UFOs.

The first case was in the 1950s when George Adamski said a UFO had taken him to the far side of the moon. Another case took place in 1961, when an American couple, Betty and Barley Hill, were chased by a UFO while they were driving home one night in New Hampshire. The couple stopped to observe the UFO through binoculars. To escape from it, they took the back roads and arrived home two hours later.

Fourteen years later, in 1975, one of the most shocking events happened in a small town in Arizona, when a woodcutter called Travis Walton disappeared with a blue-green light from a flying saucer under his teammates' eyes. Five days later, the missing woodcutter returned home and said, "I woke up on the UFO and found myself among strangers with no hair and half-formed face. They put a mask over my face and I fell asleep again. I remembered nothing else until I awoke in the forest where I had been caught."

T F

42. It was first claimed that someone had been taken away in a UFO in

☐ ☐

the middle of the 20<sup>th</sup> century.

43. Betty and Barley Hill live in the USA. ☐ ☐
44. Betty and Barley Hill were also taken away in a UFO. ☐ ☐
45. Travis Walton was caught on the road. ☐ ☐
46. The aliens wore the masks all the time while Travis was staying with them. ☐ ☐

VII)-Fill in each blank with ONE suitable word.

### **Lunar Roving Vehicle**

In the late 1960s, NASA began a series of missions to the moon. On the (47) \_\_\_\_\_ three missions the astronauts explored on foot only a few hundred meters around their spacecraft, but on the last three missions, they used a small electric car which allowed them to see and do much more on their short visits.

The Lunar Roving Vehicle (LRV) was an electric car which had a top (48) \_\_\_\_\_ of 8 mph, and allowed the astronauts to visit sites five miles away from their landing, and to (49) \_\_\_\_\_ samples from a much wider area to help scientists get a better (50) \_\_\_\_\_ of the moon's surface.

The LRV had to be (51) \_\_\_\_\_ to the moon in the bottom part of the spacecraft. A camera was set up in the LRV so that NASA could control remotely (52) \_\_\_\_\_ the Earth, allowing them to (53) \_\_\_\_\_ the astronauts as they explored the moon's surface in the LRV.

NASA plans to go (54) \_\_\_\_\_ to the moon in the year 2020. This time they aim to explore thousands of miles of the surface, staying for months at a time. Right now NASA is working on new ideas for moon cars in which astronauts can live and (55) \_\_\_\_\_ for up to two weeks. They will be able to sleep in the cab, and there is a separate compartment where they can put on the space (56) \_\_\_\_\_ to go exploring on foot

VIII)-Choose the item among A, B, C or D that best answers the question about the passage.

A UFO (Unidentified Flying Object) is any object flying in the sky which cannot be identified by the person who sees it. Sometimes the object is investigated. If people

cannot **figure out** what the object is after an investigation, it is called a UFO. If they figure out what the object is, it can no longer be called a UFO because it has been identified.

Even though UFOs can be anything, people can use the word UFO when they are talking about alien spacecraft. Flying saucer is another word that is often used to describe an identified flying object.

Studies estimate that 50-90% of all reported sightings are identified later. Usually 10 - 20% are never identified. Studies also show that very few UFO sightings are hoaxes (people trying to trick other people). Most UFOs are actually natural or man-made objects that looked strange. 80-90% of UFOs are identified as one of three different things: (a) astronomical causes (for example: planets, stars, or meteors); (b) aircraft; and (c) balloons. 10-20% of UFOs are other causes, such as birds, clouds, mirages, searchlights, etc.

57. Another word used to describe a UFO is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. astronaut      B. cooking plane      C. spacecraft      D. flying saucer
58. How many percent of all reported sights are not identified?  
A. 10-20%      B. 20-30%      C. 30-50%      D. 80-90%
59. Most of UFOs are identified as one of the following things except \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. balloons      B. rains      C. stars      D. clouds
60. Which of the following sentences is NOT true?  
A. UFO means Unidentified Flying Object.  
B. UFO is often used to talk about alien objects.  
C. Many UFO sightings are hoaxes.  
D. Over half of all reported UFO sightings are identified.
61. What does the word “**figure out**” in paragraph 1 mean?  
A. explain      B. observe      C. calculate      D. require

IX)-Read the passage carefully, and then answer the questions below.

Neptune, like the other gas giants in our solar system, doesn't have much of a solid surface to live on. However, the planet's largest moon, Triton, might make an interesting place to set up a space colony.

So far, only a spaceship has ever flown flew by Neptune and its system, and was able to photograph the southern hemisphere of the moon.

Images show that Triton's surface is mostly made up of rock and nitrogen ice, and there are smooth areas next to volcanos. The smooth areas are formed by clouds of dust and nitrogen gas which erupt from the volcanos.

62. What is Triton?

---

63. What is the interesting thing about Triton?

---

64. How many spaceships have ever flown past Triton?

---

65. What can we see on the surface of the moon?

---

66. How are the smooth areas formed?

---

X)-Rewrite the sentences in reported speech.

67. Dr. Nelson: The heat from its sun made Kepler-452b lose its oceans.

Dr. Nelson said \_\_\_\_\_

68. Mai: How old is Kepler-452b - the Earth's cousin?

Mai asked \_\_\_\_\_

69. Nick: The recycling system of the ISS supply 4 liters of water a day.

Nick said \_\_\_\_\_

70. Duong: How can the astronauts wash their hair, Mi?

Duong asked Mi \_\_\_\_\_

71. Mi: They use no-rinse shampoo and a towel to wash their hair.

Mi said \_\_\_\_\_

72. Phong: Many thousand people saw a UFO hovering around the International Space Station last year.

Phong said \_\_\_\_\_

XI)-Write meaningful sentences about the appearance of aliens based on the words or phrases given, using "may/might".

73. Aliens/ a hard container/ the brain.

\_\_\_\_\_

74. They/ two eyes/ a nose/ a mouth/ us.

\_\_\_\_\_

75. Their eyes/ bug-eyed/ and/ the nose/ not/ in the middle of the face.

\_\_\_\_\_

76. Besides teeth/ aliens/ other systems/ eating.

\_\_\_\_\_

77. They/ not have necks/ because/ they/ turn round/ their heads.

\_\_\_\_\_

78. They/ two arms/ but/ arms/ suckers/ pick up small objects.

\_\_\_\_\_

79. Their hand/ only three or four fingers.

\_\_\_\_\_

80. The number of joints/ greater/ and/ direction of bend/ different.

\_\_\_\_\_

TEST YOURSELF 4

I)-Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- |    |              |              |                |               |
|----|--------------|--------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. | A. telepathy | B. community | C. development | D. scientific |
| 2. | A. incident  | B. terrorist | C. adventure   | D. cultural   |
| 3. | A. disease   | B. tablet    | C. buggy       | D. robot      |



4. A. unnatural      B. impossible      C. emotionless      D. disrespectful
5. A. multimedia      B. communication      C. similarity      D. possibility

II)-Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

6. People will take \_\_\_\_\_ of robots to do household chores.  
A. chance      B. condition      C. advantage      D. success
7. Many people think that robots will make workers \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. employed      B. unemployed      C. no job      D. the jobless
8. It is certain that robots will \_\_\_\_\_ the quality of our lives.  
A. improve      B. rise      C. life      D. develop
9. With healthier \_\_\_\_\_ and better medical \_\_\_\_\_ people will have a longer life expectancy.  
A. ways-care      B. lifestyles –care  
C. life – cares      D. lifestyles - medicine
10. Many people think the cyberworld will \_\_\_\_\_ the real world.  
A. take      B. provide      C. take place      D. replace
11. The invention of penicillin is very useful because it has \_\_\_\_\_ lots of lives.  
A. lost      B. brought      C. saved      D. solved
12. It is said that in a couple of decades, we \_\_\_\_\_ telepathy and holography.  
A. use      B. will be used      C. have used      D. will be using
13. Mars is named \_\_\_\_\_ the Roman God of war.  
A. to      B. about      C. after      D. under
14. By 2050 we \_\_\_\_\_ in smart homes.  
A. will live      B. will be lived      C. will have lived      D. are living
15. The Earth seems too small to \_\_\_\_\_ the increasingly population.  
A. provide      B. accommodate      C. supply      D. stand

III)-Complete the sentences with the words/phrases in the box. Some can be completed with more than one answer.

<i>a smartphone</i>	<i>a landline phone</i>	<i>a laptop</i>	<i>a social network</i>
<i>a tablet computer</i>	<i>an Internet connection</i>		<i>a Wi-Fi connection</i>

16. You can make a phone call with \_\_\_\_\_.
17. You can send a text message with \_\_\_\_\_.
18. You can use the Internet with \_\_\_\_\_.
19. You can send an email with \_\_\_\_\_.
20. You can send an attachment with \_\_\_\_\_.
21. You can leave a voice message with \_\_\_\_\_.
22. You can pick up voicemail with \_\_\_\_\_.
23. You can use video chat with \_\_\_\_\_.
24. You can update your status with \_\_\_\_\_.
25. You can connect and share your status or photos with your family and friends online with \_\_\_\_\_.

IV)-Match a body language example in column A with its meaning in column B, and write the answer in each blank.

#### Body Language Meanings

Answer	A	B
_____	26. Head nodding	A. This may show that the hands are cold, which may mean that one is excited about something, or waiting eagerly.
_____	27. Biting of nails	B. It indicates that one is being defensive. It may also show disagreement with opinions and actions of other people with whom you are communicating.
_____	28. Hand on cheek	C. Whether you are sitting or standing, when your ankles are locked, you are communicating fear or nervousness.

_____	29. Finger tapping	D. The body language meaning of this gesture may be that of boredom, being upset or being ashamed, so one does not want to show their face.
_____	30. Head in hands	E. It demonstrates nervousness, stress, or insecurity. Many people do not realize that they have the habit.
_____	31. Quick rubbing of the hands	F. This action demonstrates that one is growing tired or impatient while waiting.
_____	32. Arms crossed in front of the chest	G. This gesture usually indicates agreement, a gesture that shows one is going along with another person's opinions.
_____	33. Locking of ankles	H. This body language example indicates that one is lost in thought, maybe considering something. You may be in deep concentration, and your eyebrows are furrowed.

V)-Put the verbs in brackets in the correct tenses.

34. The four planets closest to the sun – Mercury, Venus, Earth, and Mars - (be) \_\_\_\_\_ called the terrestrial planets because they have solid, rocky surfaces.

35. Our grandparents (come)\_\_\_\_\_ to stay with us next weekend.

36. People (wonder) \_\_\_\_\_ for ages whether we are alone in the universe.

37. This time next week, we (take)\_\_\_\_\_ an English test.

38. By the end of this year, I (learn) \_\_\_\_\_ English for 6 years.

39. By the end of this century, scientists (discover) \_\_\_\_\_ intelligent life.

40. Beagle 2 - the first British spaceship to Mars - (look for)\_\_\_\_\_ signs of aliens this time next month.

41. Astronauts (travel) \_\_\_\_\_ to planets outside our solar system by 2050.

42. I expect your English (improve) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot by the time you got back from England.

43. NASA (develop)\_\_\_\_\_ new aircraft to replace space shuttles by the end of this decade.

VI)-Fill in each blank with the correct statement to complete the conversation between Mai and Nick about the student life.

- A. Yes, she does. She makes presentations for her classes.
- B. I find information on the Net.
- C. We go on Facebook or Skype. We share music and read our blogs.
- D. My father does but my sister, Mary, doesn't. She's an artist.
- E. Yes, I do. I like reading books and studying.
- F. Yes. She hates technology - she hasn't got a mobile phone!
- G. I'm often online. I write a blog. I listen to music. I watch films...
- H. Usually, I study at home, but I sometimes take my laptop to my friends' houses.

Mai: Do you like your student life, Nick?

Nick: (44) \_\_\_\_\_

Mai: Where do you study?

Nick: (45) \_\_\_\_\_

Mai: How often do you go online?

Nick: (46) \_\_\_\_\_

Mai: How does the Internet help you in your studies?

Nick: (47) \_\_\_\_\_

Mai: How do your friends contact you?

Nick: (48) \_\_\_\_\_

Mai: Your mother is a teacher. Does she use technology at work?

Nick: (49) \_\_\_\_\_

Mai: And your family? Do they work with computer?

Nick: (50) \_\_\_\_\_

Mai: Really?

Nick: (51) \_\_\_\_\_

VII)-Rearrange the sentences in order to make a meaningful conversation, writing the letter (A-J) in each blank. Then practise it with your classmate.

52. \_\_\_\_\_ A. Mai: What does community media mean?
53. \_\_\_\_\_ B. Mai: How wonderful! We can learn several foreign languages then, and we will be living in the cyberworld in the year of 2030.
54. \_\_\_\_\_ C. Mai: Virtual cafes? Great! Are they useful for education, too?
55. \_\_\_\_\_ D. Mai: Communication in the form of electronic signals. Right! Picking up ideas and transmitting them to another brain will be as easy as storing them on the Net.
56. \_\_\_\_\_ E. Nick: Yeah, it will replace the real world, and we can chat with our friends over a cup of tea or coffee.
57. \_\_\_\_\_ F. Nick: I think so. Telepathy sounds like out of Hollywood, but it is certainly possible. Communication is understood to be electrical signals rather than words.
58. \_\_\_\_\_ G. Nick: Community media is a system by which people can access to various communities of people. Virtual cafes allow people to meet others in virtual environments at any time.
59. \_\_\_\_\_ H. Nick: Yes, that's right. Transmitting ideas through telepathy will become faster. And I think social media will be developing into community media.
60. \_\_\_\_\_ I. Mai: Will we be using telepathy as the main type of communication in the 21<sup>st</sup> century, Nick?
61. \_\_\_\_\_ J. Nick: Students can play and learn languages from other students all over the world.

VIII)-Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

### Eye Contact

Eye contact is an important type of (62) \_\_\_\_\_ communication. The way you look at someone can (63) \_\_\_\_\_ many things, including interest, affection, hostility, or attraction. Eye contact is also important in (64) \_\_\_\_\_ the flow of conversation.

Eye contact will be more continuous (65) \_\_\_\_\_ a person is trying to listen to you. Looking at a person can be an indication of (66) \_\_\_\_\_. People who are interested in someone show (67) \_\_\_\_\_ eye contact and lean forward toward the other person in the conversation. (68) \_\_\_\_\_ eye contact with another person can be (69) \_\_\_\_\_ to show respect.

- |     |                |               |               |                |
|-----|----------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 62. | A. verbal      | B. non-verbal | C. oral       | D. online      |
| 63. | A. mean        | B. bring      | C. transmit   | D. communicate |
| 64. | A. maintaining | B. stopping   | C. preventing | D. increasing  |
| 65. | A. although    | B. because    | C. unless     | D. if          |
| 66. | A. attract     | B. attracted  | C. attractive | D. attraction  |
| 67. | A. high        | B. strong     | C. weak       | D. deep        |
| 68. | A. Taking      | B. Doing      | C. Making     | D. Bringing    |
| 69. | A. use         | B. used       | C. using      | D. to use      |

IX)-Read the passage carefully, and then answer the questions below.

Netiquette is the etiquette or good manners of using the Internet. Being friendly and polite shows good manners both offline and online. You should ask someone's permission before posting anything about them on the web or sharing their emails, photo, or chat conversations. You need to make sure they know you are sharing it and agree with it.

If your friend gives you permission to forward something, be sure to protect them by removing any personal information like their name and email address, and remove any parts that have nothing to do with what you want to share.

If someone is rude in cyberspace, you have a choice between joining in and making it worse or just walking away from it. If their attacks are directed at you, you can block them and talk to a trusted adult about how to best deal with them before responding.

70. What is netiquette?

---

71. What are good manners when you are online or offline?

---

72. What should you do before posting and sharing something related to other people on the web?

---

73. What can you do to protect personal information you post on the Internet?

---

74. What will you do if you get cyberbullying?

---

X)-Look at the sample essay about computer games. Fill in each blank of the outline with a phrase not more than 3 words.

Many people think that computer games are only harmful to humans. Studies discovered that playing games overtime could cause health risks such as obesity, eye damage. Most game players don't exercise; instead, they eat junk food, which is not good for our health.

However, playing computer games makes the players think critically, in order to win matches or proceed to the next stages of the game. Some of the games are very difficult and no one can win easily, unless he thinks for a while. I believe it is good for the players, because they learn how to think, plan ahead strategically and solve their problems.

Moreover, we can relax our mind by playing computer games. After a day of hard working, playing such games can be a good way to have relaxation. In addition, computer games create a friendship and have become a tool to build strong relationship between friends.

In conclusion, playing computer games results in both positive and negative effects on our lives.

***The outline***

Paragraph 1 Opposing opinion: Computer games are harmful.

They can cause (75)

Most game players eat junk food, and they (76)

Paragraph 2 Supporting opinion: Thinking critically.

Players have to think critically in order (77)

They learn (78) \_\_\_\_\_ the problems.

Paragraph 3 Supporting opinion: Having relaxation

It is (79) \_\_\_\_\_ to have relaxation.

It is also a tool (80) \_\_\_\_\_ relationship between friends.

Paragraph 4 Conclusion: Computer games have both positive and negative effects on our lives.

## ĐÁP ÁN

### Unit 1: Leisure activities

#### A. PHONETICS

##### I.

/br/	/pr/
Brian, broth, branch, toothbrush, brother, browsing	apricot, presentation, prepare, prevention, programme, pronunciation, precious, private, project,

##### II.

1. *principal* 2. *present* 3. *bridge* 4. *brick* 5. *breakfast*  
6. *price* 7. *branch* 8. *Prince* 9. *bracelet* 10. *prize*

#### B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

##### I.

read: a newspaper, **a magazine, an e-mail**

go: swimming, **shopping, hiking**

**play** : football, **the guitar, computer games**

**write** : a letter, **an e-mail, something interesting**

**listen to** : the radio, **music, CDs**

**watch** : television, **a video, a game show, a quiz show**

go to: school, **the cinema, a restaurant,**



## the library

visit: friends, **cousins**

**do** : nothing, **something interesting**

**have** : a meal, **leisure activities, an outdoor activity II.**

1. about = *abt* 2. and = *n* 3. are = *r* 4. at = *@*  
5. for = *4* 6. great = *gr8* 7. kisses = *xx* 8. by the way  
= *btw*  
9. love = *luv* 10. you = *u* 11. see you = *c u* 12. thanks =  
*thx*  
13. to/two = *2* 14. would = *wd* 15. your = *ur* 16. tomorrow  
= *2moro*

### III.

**2 A.** Hi, Katy! Thx 4 ur text ... Yes, wd u love 2 meet 2moro? c u @ Roebuck's abt 5?

*A. Hi, Katy! Thanks for your text ... Yes, would you love to meet tomorrow?  
See you at Roebuck's about 5?*

**4 B.** Fantastic!!! What is it? r u in luv.

*B. Fantastic!!! What is it? Are you in love?*

**3 C.** That's gr8, c u @ 5 btw ... I've got some important news 4 u ... **C.** *That's great, see you at 5. By the way, I've got some important news for you.* **1 D.**

Hi Sue! ... Joe n I will be in town 2moro. wd u like 2 meet 4 a coffee? Luv Katy

*D. Hi Sue! ... Joe and I will be in town tomorrow. Would you like to meet for a coffee? Love Katy*

**5 E.** Tell u 2moro Love n xx Katy **E.** *Tell you tomorrow. Love and kisses Katy*

**IV.** 1. *playing* 2. *watching* 3. *skiing* 4. *doing* 5. *swimming* 6. *going*

### V.

1. don't like watching 2. hate standing 3. getting 4. prefer to be  
5. don't mind playing 6. Does he like playing 7. prefers to play  
8. likes scoring 9. doesn't mind watching

### C. SPEAKING

I. 1. like 2. o'clock 3. take 4. afternoon 5. likes

6. And you 7. do 8. joke

II. 1. *a good place* 2. *somewhere different* 3. *Why don't* 4. *lots to see* 5. *come back*

### D. READING

I. 1. **87** 2. **42** 3. **82** 4. **10** 5. **23** 6. **38** 7. **30** 8. **32**

#### II.

1. He goes to the cinema.
2. He plays football on Saturday morning.
3. He watches TV (usually a football match).
4. He does his homework.
5. He surfs the Net on Friday afternoon and Sunday evening.

#### III.

1. Skateboarding became very popular in the 1970s.
2. They are 'freestyle' skateboarding, 'ramp' skateboarding, and 'street-style' skateboarding.
3. It is a combination of freestyle and ramp skateboarding.
4. Because this allowed them to skateboard safely.
5. Yes, I do. Because there are lots of competitions now.

#### IV.

1. In the UK they play football, rugby, tennis and basketball, while in the USA they play American football, athletics, basketball and baseball.
2. They spend over 25 hours a week online.
3. The average teenager in the UK gets about £7 a week pocket money. In the USA it is about \$10.
4. They spend their money on clothes and going out, but magazines, presents and snacks are also important.
5. They have sixteen online friends.

V. 1. C 2. E 3. B 4. D 5. A

### E. WRITING

I. 1. G 2. I 3. C 4. E 5. A 6. J 7. B 8. H 9. D 10. F

- II. There are both many good things and many potential dangers about social media. It is important for parents to teach their children how to use social media wisely. Social media can be the start of bad things like cyberbullying... The recent reports about the matter say that many teenagers have online contact with strangers, and it makes them feel scared or uncomfortable. Others have received online advertising that was inappropriate for their age. It is important for parents to be aware of what their children are doing online. Parents should make their children understand that they respect their children's privacy. However, parents want to make sure (that) their children are safe.

TEST (UNIT 1)

I. 1. B 2. C 3. D 4. A 5. C

II.

6. brown 7. break 8. bread 9. broken 10. bring  
11. pretty 12. prize 13. Broccoli 14. practice 15. prepositions

III.

16. use 17. play 18. play 19. go 20. go out  
21. go 22. listen to 23. watch 24. listen to 25. go  
26. play 27. watch/listen to

IV. 28. Hi, Alex. r u free 2moro? wd u like 2 go 2 c a film? Luv Ed 29.  
OK. What wd u like 2 c?

30. How abt "The Queen n I"? It's @ the Odeon @ 7.30 p.m.

31. gr8 ... What time?

32. abt 7.15?

33. c u there. btw I haven't got any money ... Can u pay for my ticket?

34. I'll lend u the money.

35. thx for that! c u 2moro. Luv n xx, Alex V.

36. enjoy doing 37. doesn't mind helping 38. plays 39. goes skateboarding  
40. prefers to play 41. do 42. does 43. doesn't like getting

VI. 44. D 45. A 46. F 47. C 48. B

VII. 49. C 50. B 51. A 52. D 53. F 54. E

VIII. 55. T 56. F 57. T 58. F 59. F 60. F 61. T 62. T IX. 63. C 64. D 65. B 66. E  
67. A 68. G 69. H 70. J 71. F 72. I

X.

73. *First*    74. *Second*    75. *In my opinion*    76. *also*    77. *Beside*  
 78. *In addition*    79. *Finally*    80. *In short*

## Unit 2: Life in the countryside

### A. PHONETICS

/b/	/k/
black, blue, blow, blouse, block, blame, blank, blossom, blind, blink(ed)	clothing, club, class, classical, clean, clear, clever, climb(ing), clerk, close

### B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

#### I.

- ride:** a camel, a bike, a motorbike, a donkey, a car, an ostrich
- collect:** food, water, data, information, dolls, postcards
- pick:** grapes, blackberry, strawberry, tea buds,
- herd:** buffaloes, cattle, goats, sheep
- put up:** a flag, a fence, a memorial, a notice

II. 1. F 2. E 3. I 4. H 5. C 6. B 7. J 8. G 9. A 10. D

#### III.

1. *kites*    2. *vast*    3. *ride*    4. *dry* 5. *loaded* 6. *harvest*    7.  
*grassland*    8. *beehive*    9. *convenient*    10. *cattle*

#### IV.

1. *peaceful*    2. *nomadic*    3. *collector*    4. *inconvenient*    5. *unsafe* 6. *friendly*  
 7. *healthily*    8. *traditional*    9. *generously*    10. *soundly*

#### V.

1. *bigger than* 2. *hotter than* 3. *more expensive than* 4. *bigger than*  
 5. *more intelligent than* 6. *more important than* 7. *cheaper than*    8.  
*harder than* 9. *better than*    10. *worse than* VI.

1. *cheaper than* 2. *more effective than* 3. *more beautiful than* 4. *taller than*  
 5. *heavier than* 6. *longer than* 7. *easier than* 8. *easier than*  
 9. *more comfortable than*    10. *more interesting than*

#### VII.

1. I work faster than Tom (does).

2. Mai sings more beautifully than Mi (does).
3. We arrived at the party more early than the Smiths (did) last night.
4. Phong speaks more loudly than Nick (does).
5. I speak English more fluently than my sister (does).

**Disadvantages: 1, 2, 7, 8**

II. 1. more 2. for 3. there 4. so 5. can/may  
6. in 7. each 8. has 9. be 10. where

1. Linda lives on a farm in the country, in Colorado, the USA.
2. In summer, she goes hiking in the mountains.
3. In winter, she goes snowboarding.
4. She really likes it because it's relaxing and quiet.
5. She thinks city life is not safe enough to walk around alone.
6. She also thinks it is too dangerous to cycle on the streets because of the heavy traffic. II.

1. Soc Trang province has followed the new rural development programme in 22 poor villages since 2000.
2. Local people grow rice, vegetables, and raise animals.
3. Agricultural work becomes less difficult thanks to machinery.
4. Electricity helps children to study better, and paved roads make transportation easier.
5. Public works have helped local people especially Khmer people to develop production, reduce poverty, and create better lives.

## TEST (UNIT 2)

- I. 1. B 2. B 3. D 4. C 5. D
- II. 6. *black* 7. *blue* 8. *Click* 9. *blame* 10. *blood*  
 11. *block* 12. *club* 13. *clock* 14. *close* 15. *clothes*
- III. 16. *colourful* 17. *inconvenient* 18. *peaceful* 19. *brave* 20. *vast*  
 21. *nomadic* 22. *slow* 23. *safe* 24. *quiet* 25. *hard*
- IV. 26. collection 27. inconvenient 28. skillful 29. unsafe 30. friendly 31. healthily
- V. 32. more heavily 33. harder 34. more brightly 35. more quickly  
 36. more happily 37. more noisily 38. more easily 39. better VI. 40. more soundly  
 41. more healthily 42. more traditionally 43. better 44. more generously  
 45. more quickly 46. more optimistically 47. more badly VII. 48. Nick writes essays more carefully than Phuc (does).
49. A snail moves more slowly than a crab (does).  
 50. My father explained the subject more clearly than my brother (did).  
 51. My cousin sings better than I do/me.  
 52. Phong swims faster than Phuc (does).
- VIII. 53. F 54. D 55. A 56. G 57. B 58. H 59. E 60. C
- IX. 61. D 62. C 63. B 64. A 65. A 66. C 67. D 68. A 69. D 70. B
- X. 71. D 72. C 73. B 74. D 75. C

### XI.

76. Villagers usually earn their living from farming, raising animals, and making handicrafts.
77. They live in a small community with a temple where great events such as festivals are organized.
78. Villagers in the Southern usually live in houses built on stilts to keep above flood waters.
79. Along the coastal lines, fishermen depend on the sea to live on.
80. People in Central Highlands and the northern regions live by growing rice, rubber trees, coffee and tea.

### Unit 3: Peoples of Viet Nam

#### A. PHONETICS

/sk/	/sp/	/st/
disconnect,	spell, speech,	stamp, stone,

discourage, tasks, school, ask, discover, skillful	spend, sport, speak, crisp, spicy	best, text, stand, story
--	--------------------------------------	-----------------------------

## B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

- I. 1. cultural heritage    2. information    3. ethnic groups    4. research  
5. a tour    6. display area    7. stilt house    8. little bridges  
II. 1. home    2. dress    3. at    4. with    5. ethnic  
6. for    7. valleys    8. provide    9. villages    10. their  
III. 1. a    2. the    3. the    4. the    5. the    6. The    7. A    8. a    9. an    10. The IV. 1. The    2. the    3. The    4. The  
5. an    6. The    7. The    8. the    9. a    10. a

## V.

- When was the house chosen for the background of the film?
- Where is the house?
- What is the film about?
- Why was she raised by her stepmother?
- When did she begin to look for her birth mother? VI.
- How many inhabitants does the Ha Nhi group have?
- Where do they live?
- Who do they (mainly) worship?
- What do they live on?
- What do they use to work in the fields?
- Where are the gardens?

## C. SPEAKING

- Which language do the Hmong speak?
- What do they mainly grow?
- Besides that what else do they grow?
- What (animals) do the Hmong raise?
- What is the most effective source of transportation for the Hmong/ in the mountainous areas?
- What is the Hmong handicraft famous for?
- When is the Hmong's New Year?
- What do villagers play during the New Year's Festival?

## D. READING

- I. 1. B    2. C    3. A    4. D    5. C    6. A    7. B    8. D

**II.**

1. It is located in Duong Lam commune at a 45 km distance from Hanoi.
2. It is the birthplace of two kings in the history of Vietnam, Phung Hung (or Bo Cai Dai Vuong) and Ngo Quyen.
3. It is typical for villages in the midlands in the North of Vietnam.
4. There are still nearly old 200 houses.
5. Phung Hung Temple, Ngo Quyen Royal Tomb, Mong Phu communal house, Ho Gam Hill, and the temple at which the diplomat Giang Van Minh is worshiped.

**E. WRITING**

1. The Cham ethnic group has a population of about 100,000.
2. They live mostly on the coast between Ninh Thuan and Binh Thuan provinces, or on the Cambodian border around Chau Doc.
3. The Cham have a tradition of wet rice cultivation.
4. Handicrafts are fairly well-developed, especially silkworm textiles and handmade pottery wares.
5. Both men and women wear long one-piece sarongs or cloth wrappers.
6. The main color of their daily dress is cotton white.
7. The chief means of transporting goods and farm produce is the back-basket.
8. The most important festival, called *Bon Kate*, is held near the Cham towers in the tenth month of the Lunar year.

**TEST (UNIT 3)**

**I.** 1. D      2. B    3. C    4. A    5. B    6. B    7. C    8. C    9. B    10. D **II.** 11. *speech*  
 12. *spend*    13. *ask*      14. *sports*    15. *stone*    16. *skill*

17. *spelling* 18. *speak* 19. *disk* 20. *school* 21. *best* 22. *stamps*

**III.** 23. mountainous      24. agricultural 25. traditional 26. diversity 27. peaceful **IV.**  
 28. What is the population of the Khmer ethnic group?

29. It is over one million.
30. Where does the Khmer live?
31. They live in Soc Trang, Tra Vinh, Can Tho, Kien Giang, and An Giang provinces.
32. What are their customs?
33. Young Khmer people often go to pagodas to study and improve their virtues and knowledge.
34. What do they do to live on?



35. They live on wet rice cultivation, animal husbandry, weaving, pottery and sugar making from the “Thot Not” tree.
36. What are their main festivals?
37. They are “Chon Cho Nam Tho May” (New Year Festival), Buddha’s Birthday, “Don Ta” (Forgive the Crimes of the Dead), and “Ooc Om Bok” (Moon Worship).

**V.** 38. *ethnic minority* 39. *branch* 40. *share* 41. *stilt house*

42. *marriage* 43. *musical instruments* 44. *ceremonies* 45. *a funeral house*

## **VI.**

46. The 47. a 48. The 49. The 50. an 51. the 52. the 53. the

**VII.** 54. What custom do ethnic groups in Central Highlands have?

55. What do people in the Central Highlands believe?
56. What would the dead do if they were not buried in beautiful graves?
57. What is the purpose of making funeral houses and cutting wooden statues?
58. How many tools do people in the Central Highlands use to make statues?
59. What topics for funeral statues are taken from?

**VIII.** 60. B 61. C 62. A 63. D 64. C 65. B 66. A  
67. B 68. D 69. B

**IX.** 70. C 71. A 72. C 73. B 74. D

**X.** 75. It is quite simple to cook Thang Co.

76. The horse meat and organs are washed and mixed with 12 traditional spices: cardamom, anise flower, cinnamon, ginger and some secret species...
77. Then all meat and organs are put in a large pan and fried.
78. Wait until the meat becomes dry, and pour water in the pan and simmer within more than an hour.
79. The organs such as heart, liver, blood, bowel, meat, bone are added later and then simmered and put more vegetables.
80. The pans of Thang Co in highland market fairs are usually enough for a few dozen of people.

## TEST YOURSELF 1

**I.** 1. D 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. B

**II.** 6. D 7. D 8. A 9. A 10. D 11. B 12. C 13. B 14. B 15. A

**III.** 16. *blank* 17. *blanket* 18. *blind* 19. *blouse* 20. *cleaning*

21. *clearly* 22. *blackberry* 23. *classical* 24. *block* 25. *clerk*

**IV.** 26. **uploaded** 27. **video-sharing site** 28. **online community** 29. **hits**

30. **posted** 31. **website** 32. **blog** 33. **download**

34. **populated** 35. **optimistically** 36. **peaceful** 37. **villagers** 38.

**inconvenience** **VI.** 39. *hate* 40. *quite like* 41. *don't really like* 42. *love*

43. *don't mind* **VII.** 44. **Courses 1, 3** 45. **Course 1** 46. **Course 4** 47. **Course 2**

48. **Courses 2, 3** 49. **Course 3** 50. **Course 4** 51. **Course 1**

**VIII.** 52. *tribe* 53. *takes* 54. *slope* 55. *stream*

56. *image* 57. *designs* 58. *use* 59. *colors*

**IX.** 60. **B** 61. **A** 62. **A** 63. **B** 64. **C**

**X.** 65. **C** 66. **D** 67. **A** 68. **C** 69. **D**

**XI.** 70. **D** 71. **A** 72. **B** 73. **D** 74. **A**

**XII.** 75. **In my opinion** 76. **also** 77. **I think** 78. **Besides**

79. **In addition** 80. **As I have noted**

**Unit 4: Our customs and traditions**

## A. PHONETICS

### I.

/spr/	/str/
spray, spout, spring roll, spread, spring, spreadsheet, offspring	straight, strange, stranger, street, strength, stress, strict, striker, strings, stripes, instructions, pedestrians, strawberries, streams, district,

### II.

/spr/: spread, spring, newsprint, spreads, spout

/str/: strange, stress, strange, district, street, astronaut, frustrated

## B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

### I.

1. *a temple* 2. *take off* 3. *provider* 4. *according to – break with tradition*
5. *a tradition* 6. *cultural* 7. *the custom of* 8. *gift* 9. *unlucky*
10. *death* 11. *clocks*

## II.

1. In Thailand, **there's a tradition that** visitors should dress neatly in all religious shrines and temples, and never enter in shorts or sleeveless shirts.
2. **According to tradition**, never climb onto a Buddha image to take a photograph or do anything that might indicate a lack of respect.
3. **Following the tradition of Thailand**, a monk is not allowed to touch money, so if a man wishes to give money to a monk, he must place it in the bowl.
4. **According to the tradition**, the “wai” – a slight bow with the palms together and the fingertips touching the face – is a way of showing respect or thanks, but you can **break with tradition by** smiling or nodding.
5. You have to **follow the tradition of** removing shoes when entering a private Thai home as a sign of respect.
6. **According to tradition**, you should never point your feet at someone or an object as this is considered disrespectful.
7. **Following the tradition of** Thailand, it is considered very rude to touch people on the head, but now you can **break with tradition by** touching young children on their heads.
8. The Thai **have the custom of** using the word “Khun” as the best way to address someone and it is used in front of the name, usually the first name.

## III. 1. You shouldn't drink at a dinner party until everyone is served.

2. You should raise your drink and say “kampai!” (cheers) before you drink.
3. You should use a small wet cloth at most Japanese restaurant to wash your hands before eating.
4. You shouldn't use it as a napkin or to touch any part of your face.
5. You should use chopsticks during the meal 6. You shouldn't tip in any situation in Japan.

## IV.

1. don't have to get up      2. have to decide 3. don't have to take    4. has to open
5. have to talk 6. don't have to send 7. don't have to explain 8. have to stop

- V.** 1. should    2. should    3. shouldn't 4. shouldn't 5. should 6. shouldn't    7. should  
8. shouldn't 9. should    10. should

## VI.

1. You should 2. You should 3. You shouldn't 4. You shouldn't  
5. You shouldn't 6. You should 7. You should 8. You shouldn't

### C. SPEAKING

- I. 1. A 2. F 3. D 4. B 5. G 6. H 7. C 8. E

## II.

1. had to be 2. had to train 3. did you have to be 4. had to start  
5. Did you have to wear 6. didn't have to wear 7. didn't have to climb 8. didn't  
have to pay

- III. 1. F 2. C 3. H 4. B 5. E 6. A 7. D 8. G

### D. READING

- I. 1. In Indonesia. 2. In Samoa. 3. In Muslim countries.  
4. In Canada and the US. 5. In Korea.

- II. 1. False 2. True 3. True 4. False 5. True

- III. 1. E 2. C 3. B 4. D 5. A 6. T 7. T 8. F 9. T 10. F

- IV. 1. True 2. False 3. True 4. False 5. True

- V. 1. E 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. D

6. Because people believe that their ancestors possess supernatural powers.  
7. They are: visiting the ancestors at their graves, making offerings to them to provide  
for their welfare in the afterlife, burning incense every day on the domestic  
ancestral altar.  
8. Because they believe that their ancestors may use the money in the afterlife.  
9. We can see the year of the death, his full name, and the name of the son who erects  
the tablet.  
10. They take place on the death date of the ancestors.

### E. WRITING

1. The *xoe* dance has already been considered as a cultural and folklore activity of Thai  
ethnic people in Hoa Binh Province.  
2. Ten centuries ago, *xoe* was performed on the occasion of the establishment of the  
hamlets and villages or during the festivals of the Thai ethnic people.  
3. Now, it has developed into 36 dances and has become the symbol of solidarity  
among the ethnic groups in the northwest.  
4. The *xoe* dance is performed by the boys and girls in the hamlets.  
5. They hold hands to form a circle and dance together.

6. The musical instruments for the dance include lutes, drums, two-chord fiddles, gongs and cymbals.
7. For the Thai natives, they do not need to learn the *xoe* dance because they can dance automatically when they grow up.
8. Without the *xoe* dance, Thai boys and girls do not become lovely couples.

#### TEST (UNIT 4)

I. 1. C 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. D 6. D 7. C 8. B 9. A 10. A

II. 11. *tradition* 12. *festival* 13. *celebrations* 14. *fortune* 15. *presentation*  
16. *activities* 17. *wishes* 18. *enjoyment* 19. *water-throwing* 20. *heat*

#### III.

21. You should not work so hard. 22. We should buy her a nice birthday present.

23. We should take it to the garage. 24. We should go to bed early tonight.

25. You should not listen to him. 26. You/We should not worry so much.

27. He should look for another one. 28. We should turn it off.

29. You should have a haircut. 30. He should meet the teacher after class. **IV.**

31. should 32. should 33. have to 34. should 35. have to

36. don't have to 37. should 38. don't have to 39. shouldn't 40. should

**V.** 41. had to go back 42. had to walk 43. had to stay

44. didn't have to pay 45. didn't have to eat 46. had to buy

**VI.** 47. F 48. D 49. H 50. E 51. A 52. G 53. C 54. B **VII.** 55. A 56. C 57. D  
58. B 59. D 60. A 61. B 62. C

**VIII.** 63. D 64. E 65. A 66. C 67. B 68. T 69. F 70. T 71. F 72. T

#### IX.

73. The Xa Pho ethnic group has a population of over 1,000 people mainly in the districts of Sa Pa.

74. Different folk dances of the Xa Pho are performed by groups of five to ten people in straight or curved lines.

75. In the dance movements, the left hand uses a musical instrument, while the right hand holds the costumes following the beat.

76. Girls often wear the traditional skirt and shirt of indigo fabric.

77. They embroider and decorate their clothes elaborately and beautifully.

78. The main musical instrument is Ma Nhi.

79. The women dance and beat the rhythm at the same time.
80. Men and women have separate dances, and they seldom dance together/ seldom dancing together.

10

## Unit 5: Festivals in Viet Nam

### A. PHONETICS

#### I.

Verbs	Nouns	Verbs	Nouns
1. concentrate	<i>concentration</i>	16. organize	<i>organization</i>
2. compose	<i>composition</i>	17. compare	<i>comparison</i>
3. consider	<i>consideration</i>	18. attend	<i>attention</i>
4. construct	<i>construction</i>	19. recognize	<i>recognition</i>
5. coordinate	<i>coordination</i>	20. animate	<i>animation</i>
6. depress	<i>depression</i>	21. consume	<i>consumption</i>
7. donate	<i>donation</i>	22. explode	<i>explosion</i>
8. erect	<i>erection</i>	23. discuss	<i>discussion</i>
9. found	<i>foundation</i>	24. celebrate	<i>celebration</i>
10. locate	<i>location</i>	25. educate	<i>education</i>
11. apply	<i>application</i>	26. commemorate	<i>commemoration</i>
12. generate	<i>generation</i>	27. invade	<i>invasion</i>
13. oblige	<i>obligation</i>	28. preserve	<i>preservation</i>
14. reflect	<i>reflection</i>	29. recommend	<i>recommendation</i>
15. converse	<i>conversation</i>	30. present	<i>presentation</i>

Stress on 2 <sup>nd</sup>	Stress on 3 <sup>rd</sup>	Stress on 4 <sup>th</sup>
---------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------

<b>syllable</b>	<b>syllable</b>	<b>syllable</b>
<i>depression, donation, erection, foundation, location, attention, consumption, explosion, discussion, reflection, invasion</i>	<i>concentration, composition, construction, comparison, recognition, animation, celebration, education, application, generation, obligation, conversation, preservation, presentation</i>	<i>consideration, coordination, organization, commemoration, recommendation,</i>

II. 1. C 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. D 6. D 7. D 8. C

#### B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

I. 1. because 2. Moreover 3. Although 4. but

5. *When* 6. *While* 7. *and* 8. *so*

II. 1. C 2. A 3. D 4. A 5. B 6. C 7. A 8. C

III. 1. *pray* 2. *celebrate* 3. *honour/ worship* 4. *commemorate*

5. *symbolizes* 6. *hold* 7. *perform* 8. *honour/ worship*

IV. 1. C 2. E 3. B 4. A 5. D

#### C. SPEAKING

I. 1. H 2. D 3. F 4. A 5. I 6. J 7. G 8. B 9. E 10. C II. 1. E 2. F 3. D  
4. B 5. A 6. C

#### D. READING

I. 1. D 2. C 3. B 4. E 5. A

6. It is held on the 6<sup>th</sup> day of the Lunar New Year in Nem Thuong Village, in Bac Ninh Province.
7. This festival is held to commemorate a general in the Ly Dynasty – Doan Thuong, who reclaimed this land.

8. It originated from the legend that the general brought his troops to this land and slaughtered wild male pigs to feed his soldiers.
9. It is believed to symbolize prosperity, vitality and good harvest.
10. Because the festival is known as the most brutal in the country.
- II. 1. B      2. A    3. D    4. C    5. B    6. C    7. A    8. D    9. A    10. C
- III. 1. C    2. E    3. F    4. B    5. D    6. A
7. It is Chol Chnam Thmay Festival.
8. It is held in mid-April, in 3 days (4 days for the leap year).
9. They prepare new clothes, food and drinks for whole festival days, and they also repair, clean and decorate their house.
10. On the altar, they present 5 flower branches, 5 candles, 5 incense, 5 cereal seeds and fruit crops.
11. Major activities are bathing, dressing nice, bringing sacrifice gifts to the temple in good time which has been selected.
12. They cook rice and bring it to the temple on the second New Year day.
13. They do Buddha bathing and monk-bathing ceremony on the third day.
14. They go to the grave to pray for the souls of those who died.

#### E. WRITING

##### I.

1. On New Year's Eve, the Vietnamese put fruits on the altar, **and** they also arrange watermelon and traditional cakes such as *chung* cakes.
2. **While** many people go to pagodas or churches on New Year's to pray for the coming year, many others remain in their home in front of the altar to welcome the ancestors through prayer.
3. **Although** people from Western countries do not follow ancestor worship, ancestor worship is considered a type of religious practices in some Asian countries.
4. **Because** *xoan* singing is still in the memory of folk artists in Phu Tho province, they always try their best to hand down offspring the old style of singing in the activities of the clubs. (because) II.
1. The Giong Festival is held from the 6<sup>th</sup> to the 12<sup>th</sup> of the 4<sup>th</sup> lunar month in several venues around Ha Noi.
2. The festival commemorates Saint Giong who defeated the An.
3. It is also an opportunity to hope for abundant harvests and happy lives, and express patriotism.
4. During the festival, villagers do the statue bathing, processions of bamboo flowers to Soc Temple.



5. The festival also provides many entertaining activities, including folk games and traditional singing performances.
6. The festival has been recognized by UNESCO as an intangible cultural heritage of mankind.

#### TEST (UNIT 5)

- I. 1. C      2. B    3. B    4. B    5. A
- II. 6. B      7. C    8. A    9. D    10. B    11. C    12. C    13. C    14. C    15. A
- III. 16. because    17. when    18. and    19. Moreover    20. and    21. Therefore
22. First    23. Then    24. because    25. because/when    26. *if*    27. *if*
- IV. 28. G    29. D      30. H    31. C    32. E    33. A    34. F    35. B
- V. 36. B    37. C      38. A    39. D    40. B    41. C    42. B    43. A    44. D    45. B    VI. 46. T    47. T
48. F    49. T    50. T    51. F    52. F    53. F    54. T    55. F
- VII. 56. *and*    57. *When*    58. *Moreover*    59. *so*
60. *Because*    61. *when*    62. *Therefore*    63. *although*
64. It is held on 15<sup>th</sup> day of the eighth lunar month to celebrate biggest full moon in the year.
65. They prepare many different foods – moon cakes, candies, biscuits, jellies, and fruit.

## 12

66. They are given many nice lanterns and diverse funny masks.
67. They can light the lanterns during the Mid-Autumn night.
68. Because it takes place when people have had good crops.
69. It is a good example of the traditional culture of the Vietnamese. **VIII.**
70. **While** the establishment of the club of Xoan singing in Phu Tho has brought new energy and strength, villagers in these communes give great contribution to the development of the clubs.
71. Valentine Day is not very popular in Viet Nam, **yet** people in big cities send gifts on that day.
72. Flower buds and blossoms are the symbols for new beginning **because** these two distinctive flowers are widely sold and purchased during Tet.
73. Homes are often cleaned and decorated before New Year's Eve, **and** the kitchen needs to be cleaned before the 23<sup>rd</sup> night of the last month.
74. **When** street vendors rush into the city center with peach trees on their bicycles, the streets look like moving pink forests.

## IX. King Hung Temple Festival

75. King Hung Temple Festival takes place yearly at King Hung Temple from the 8<sup>th</sup> to 11<sup>th</sup> day of the third lunar month.
76. During the festival, Vietnamese people go to King Hung Temple on Nghia Linh Mountain, Phu Tho Province to take part in this festival.
77. The festival features many folk games such as bamboo swings, rice cooking competitions, lion dance, human chess, water puppet performance, wrestling, crossbow shooting, etc.
78. On the 10<sup>th</sup> day, a national ceremony is held with participation of about 40 villages.
79. Governmental leaders will lead the procession up to Upper Temple.
80. There is a ceremony of offering incense, five-fruit trays, and specialities such as *chung* cakes and *day* cakes, which are two traditional foods of Vietnam.

## Unit 6: Folk tales

### A. PHONETICS

1. What a beautiful princess My Chau was! 2. What a cunning prince Trong Thuy was!
3. What a strong and kind young man Thach Sanh was!
4. What a cunning merchant Ly Thong was!
5. What a magical guitar Thach Sanh had!
6. What a wonderful rice pot Thach Sanh had!
7. What a wonderful lamp Aladdin had!
8. What a beautiful voice the Little Mermaid had!
9. What a big bamboo Khoai had!
10. What delicious food *chung* and *day* cakes are!

### B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

- I. 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. D 6. C 7. A 8. B
- II. 1. was reading – heard 2. came – was having 3. went – was raining  
4. Were you watching – phoned 5. met – was wearing 6. broke – were playing  
7. were waiting – arrived 8. was not driving – happened  
9. fell – was painting 10. were you doing
- III. 1. saw – were trying 2. was walking – felt 3. were driving – appeared  
4. was she driving – happened 5. was waiting – came 6. invited – was visiting  
7. didn't want – was waiting 8. rang – was watching

9. began – was sitting                      10. went – were having

**IV.** 1. came – were watering                      2. was talking    3. was practicing – was reading

4. were climbing – visited 5. was talking – entered 6. was making – went

7. was crossing – stepped – fell                      8. began – was planting 9. arrived – was writing                      10. were walking – heard

**V.**

1. was doing 2. were shopping 3. was chatting 4. were driving 5. was making

6. were cooking 7. was sleeping                      8. were having    9. were drinking 10. was trying

**VI.** 1. was cutting 2. slipped    3. fell 4. was                      5. started 6. appeared    7. asked                      8. cried    9. told                      10. felt

11. dived 12. appeared 13. refused 14. was not 15. dived

16. appeared    17. was    18. shook    19. told    20. was 21. came    22. cried    23. thanked 24. was    25. gave

**VII.**

1. were you doing 2. Were you playing 3. wasn't playing                      4. was raining

5. was shining 6. wasn't shining 7. was watching 8. was helping

9. were cleaning 10. was cleaning 11. Was he getting                      12. was winding

**VIII.** 1. B    2. D 3. B 4. D 5. A    6. B    7. B 8. D    9. B    10. A

**C. SPEAKING**

**I.** 1. E 2. G    3. C    4. A    5. H    6. F    7. D    8. B

**II.** 1. by Hans Christian Andersen

2. it is a fairy tale

3. the Emperor, the two strangers, the Chief Minister and the small boy

4. didn't spend any time doing the things an emperor should do, but he was only interested in trying on new clothes and parading them in front of his people

5. the Emperor that they could make magic cloth

6. ordered a suit of magic cloth

7. a small boy said what everyone was thinking: the Emperor was wearing nothing 8. The Emperor just carried on with his parade – thinking the people were all be the fools III.

**1** Hansel and Gretel

1. They are Hansel, Gretel, and the witch.
2. It is about two smart children, Hansel and Gretel.
3. A woodcutter and his second-wife couldn't afford to feed his own children. The stepmother suggested leaving them in the forest for a while. The children, Hansel and Gretel, heard that and they left their home. Hansel used small rocks to mark the way back home. The two kids had no food when they found a witch's house made of bread, cake and sugar. Of course, they ate a lot and didn't die.
4. The witch asked them to stay. After that, she locked up Hansel to fatten him, and made Gretel work hard around the house.
5. This went on for a while until the witch decided to eat both of them. She asked Gretel to check the oven's heat from inside. Gretel tricked the witch into doing that instead. The witch was burned up and the children went home with a lot of her treasure. Unluckily, the mother died. The kids and the father lived happily ever since.

**2** The Bronze Pig

1. The small boy, the glove-maker and his wife, and the artist.
2. It is a story about a poor young boy in Florence, Italy.
3. First, the boy was begging for money, but was not successful. He slept on top of a bronze pig which is actually a fountain. At night, the pig came alive and brought the

**14**

boy into the museum where he saw a lot of famous paintings.

4. The next morning, the boy woke up and went home. His mother made him go away for not bringing in any money, so he ran away. A glove-maker and his wife took him in. The boy met an artist and he taught the boy to draw.
5. He grew up to become a very talented artist who painted many beautiful pictures, including a painting of the bronze pig.

**D. READING**

- I. 1. One night her sisters went to a ball at the palace.
2. She felt very sad.
3. Her/The fairy godmother appeared and helped her.

4. She danced with the prince.
5. The prince and Cinderella were married and lived happily ever after.

**II. 1. C 2. A 3. D 4. B**

5. Because he saw them raise their heads to listen to the prayer coming from the nearby temple.
  6. He raised his bow and shot the cobra to save the snakes.
  7. The male snake gave him a beautiful white pearl as a gift of its gratitude.
  8. Because it allowed one to understand the language of animals.
  9. Because he dropped the magic pearl into the sea.
  10. He ordered an army of workmen who brought hundreds of cartloads of sand to the seashore to fill up the sea to find his lost pearl.
11. kind    12.            13.            14. cruel    15. hunter  
              harmless    grateful
16.            17. tried    18. and      19.            20.  
passed                                    interested    while/when

## E. WRITING

# The Legend of the Milky Way

**0.** Once upon a time, there was a very beautiful and charming princess, named Chuc Nu.

00. She was a very hard-working lady and she was often sitting on the shore of the Silver River to sew clothes.

1. One day, a young man, named Nguu Lang, herded his buffaloes to the river.
2. He fell in love with the princess at first sight, and she loved him, too.
3. The King of Heaven did not allow the daughter to marry Nguu Lang.
4. But the couple had to promise to continue their work after their marriage.
5. They enjoyed being married so much and they forgot their promise.
6. The King became furious and ordered them to separate.
7. Each of them would live on one side of the river and could only look at each other from across the river.
8. The King allowed them to meet once a year in the seventh month of the lunar year.
9. When they meet each other, they usually cry for joy.
10. They cry even more bitterly when it is time for separation.
11. That is why it rains heavily at the beginning of the seventh lunar month in Vietnam.

12. If you look at the sky on clear nights, you may see the Silver River which looks like a long milky white strip.

TEST (UNIT 6)

I. 1. A 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. A 6. D

II.

7. lived 8. was performing 9. caught 10. said 11. was

12. agreed 13. didn't like 14. told 15. came 16. was not

17. sent 18. were 19. wanted 20. found 21. was sitting

III. 22. B 23. D 24. E 25. F 26. C 27. A

IV. 28. B 29. A 30. E 31. G 32. F 33. C 34. D

V. 35. G 36. E 37. C 38. F 39. B 40. D

VI. 41. B 42. C 43. A 44. C 45. D 46. B 47. C 48. B 49. D 50. B

VII. 51. B 52. E 53. D 54. A 55. C

56. Because one day her husband beat her with a stick and dismissed her from home.

57. He was deeply sad and regretful, so he decided to go away to find her until he spent all money and became a beggar.

58. Because she found that the stack of straw, where her drunk former husband was sleeping, had been being burning with a deer roasted it.

59. He jumped into the fire to die beside his wife.

60. God turned them into three parts of the earthen tripod so that they could live side by side forever.

61. faithful 62. regretful 63. loved 64. come/move to another place

65. lived in harmony 66. felt sorry for 67. decided to go away 68. because it was

69. jumped into the fire 70. what to do

VIII. 71. Twenty-five tin toy soldiers are given to the boy as a birthday present.

72. The last toy soldier had only one leg because they ran out of tin.

73. The one-legged soldier saw the paper dancer on the table, and fell in love with her.

74. The soldier was placed on the window sill and knocked out of the window.

75. He was put in a paper boat and washed away.

76. The soldier was eaten by a fish.

77. When the fish was caught, sold, and cut open, the soldier was found inside.

78. The soldier was taken back to the playroom, and he was thrown onto the fire.

79. The paper dancer was blown onto the fire.

80. The soldier melted into a heart shape.

### TEST YOURSELF 2

- I. 1. B 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. C 6. A 7. D 8. C  
II. 9. C 10. A 11. C 12. D 13. A 14. B 15. A 16. C  
III. 17. D 18. E 19. B 20. A 21. C  
IV. 22. C 23. H 24. F 25. D 26. J 27. G 28. E 29. A 30. B 31. I  
V. 32. C 33. A 34. D 35. D 36. C 37. B 38. B 39. A  
VI. 40. F 41. T 42. F 43. F 44. T 45. T 46. T 47. T  
VII. 1. B 2. E 3. A 4. C 5. F 6. D 7. T 8. T 9. F  
10. T 11. T 12. T 13. F 14. F  
VIII. 62. B 63. A 64. D 65. C 66. T 67. T 68. T 69. F  
IX. 70. Lion dances are held when opening a new company, or commencing an activity, **because** these dances are believed to bring good luck and prosperity and drive away evil.  
71. **If** you come and visit a Chinese family, you should bear in mind not to give an odd number of presents **because** odd numbers are considered unlucky in China.  
72. The weather in India is rather hot all year round, **but** you shouldn't wear shorts or sleeveless shirts when visiting a pagoda.  
73. Lim Festival is the festival of "Quan Ho" singing; **moreover**, it is also space for various folk games. (moreover)  
74. People believe that the first person who visits their home during Tet holiday may bring them welfare for the whole year; **however**, the person who sweeps the floor on the first three days of this festive occasion might sweep away the wealth.

## 16

- X. 75. Apsara dance is a form of Cambodian classical dance.  
76. It is known as Cambodian Royal Ballet.  
77. The Apsara is performed by a woman in a traditional dress  
78. The dance uses gestures to tell myths or religious stories.  
79. It has a soft movement and loudly traditional Khmer music during its performance.  
80. Apsara dance does not require physical ability, but it requires smooth movement

## Unit 7: Pollution

### A. PHONETICS

#### I.

<b>Oo</b>	scenic, sonic, comic, magic, fabric, traffic
<b>Ooo</b>	Arabic, classical, typical, logical, tropical, vertical, practical, critical, mythical
<b>oOo</b>	terrific, kinetic, linguistic, statistic, cosmetic, aerobic, symbolic, fantastic, phonetic, emphatic, historic, heroic, specific, mechanic, republic, romantic, elastic, ceramic, aquatic
<b>oOoo</b>	arithmetic, botanical, numerical, political
<b>ooOo</b>	economic, supersonic, systematic, sympathetic, automatic, scientific, microscopic, oceanic, geographic, energetic

**II.** 1. *chemicals* 2. *historical* 3. *medical* 4. *aquatic*  
5. *specific* 6. *psychological* 7. *dramatic* 8. *heroic*

#### B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

**I.** 1. C 2. F 3. E 4. H 5. A 6. G 7. B 8. D

**II.** 1. contaminated 2. Industrial 3. death 4. Polluted  
5. pollutants 6. difficulty

**III.** 1. Air pollution leads to asthma, allergies and other respiratory illnesses.

2. Aquatic life suffers or dies because of thermal pollution.
  3. The waste water is released from the paper mill in Thai Nguyen City, so water in the Cau River becomes brown and has terrible smell.
  4. Water in rivers, canals, lakes are extremely polluted and has bad effects on people's health because people use too much herbicide to treat weeds.
  5. Many fish in the river die because the temperature of water increases.
  6. Plastic bags take so long to decompose, so nearly all of them still exist in the environment today.
- IV.** 2. If the sea gets warmer, the ice at the North and South Poles will melt.
3. If the ice at the North and South Poles melts, the sea level will rise.
  4. If the sea level rises, there will be floods in many parts of the world.
  5. If there are floods in many parts of the world, many people will lose their homes.

**V.** 1. If a person looks at the sky at night, he won't be able to see the Milky Way by naked eye.

2. If noise pollution happens regularly, it will cause stress or nuisance.



3. If water pollution gets more serious in the future, it will affect the development of economy and society.
4. If Australia has invested in water in Viet Nam with good results, half of the population in the rural areas will have access to fresh water.
5. If you use compact light bulbs, you will save a lot of energy.
6. If we have more space, we will plant more trees.

### C. SPEAKING

I. 1. *into the river* 2. *That's terrible!* 3. *to do about it*

4. *to stop them* 5. *By the way*

II. 1. F 2. C 3. H 4. E 5. A 6. G 7. D 8. B

### D. READING

I. 1. B 2. A 3. C 4. D 5. D 6. D 7. C 8. B

II. 1. D 2. C 3. B 4. E 5. A 6. T 7. T 8. F 9. F 10. T

III. 1. C 2. E 3. A 4. B 5. D

6. They are satellites, solar panels, rocket bodies and fragments from space shuttles that are floating in space and are no longer functional.
7. It affects us here on Earth as well and will continue to affect us in future travel.
8. It left debris over an area the size of Austria.
9. They were injured by pieces of space debris that hit their ship.
10. No, it isn't. (It is very challenging.)

### E. WRITING

1. Noise pollution is any loud sounds that are either harmful or annoying to humans and animals.
2. Generally, noise is produced by household appliances, big trucks, vehicles and motorbikes on the road, planes and helicopters flying over cities, loud speakers, etc.
3. Noise pollution can cause stress, illnesses, hearing loss, sleep loss, and lost productivity.
4. Health effects of noise include anxiety, stress, headaches, irritability and nervousness.
5. Noise-producing industries, airports, bus terminals should be located far from living places.
6. The officials must check the misuse of loudspeakers, outdoor parties and discos, as well as public announcement systems.

TEST (UNIT 7)

I. 1. B 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. A

II. 6. Natural 7. harmful 8. contaminated 9. polluted  
10. unable 11. environmental

III. 12. to 13. into 14. to 15. away 16. with

IV. 17. If people dump wastes and poisonous chemicals into water, tiny animals will eat pollutants in polluted water.

18. If tiny animals eat pollutants in polluted water, fish and shellfish eating tiny animals will contain poison in their bodies.

19. If fish and shellfish eating tiny animals contain poison in their bodies, people who eat these fish will get some diseases.

20. If people who eat these fish get some diseases, they will have to go to hospital.

21. If they have to go to hospital, their family members will take care of them.

V. 22. results → results in 23. make → cause 24. because → because of  
25. because → so 26. if → because 27. so → because

VI.

28. Light pollution makes us unable to see the stars in the sky.

29. Glass panels, windows, lawns and roofs make light pollution worse because they reflect both artificial and sun light.

30. All sounds are not noise because noise is any sound that is unwanted and goes beyond its certain limit, for example, above 80 decibels.

31. More and more noise is created by modern civilization, so it has now become a major environmental pollutant, especially in urban areas.

32. Contamination in the air causes acid rain which damages soil, vegetation and aquatic life of the region.

33. People suffer from stress and anxiety because of noise pollution.

VII. 34. E 35. C 36. G 37. A 38. H 39. D 40. F 41. B

VIII. 42. C 43. A 44. C 45. B 46. A 47. D 48. B 49. A IX. 50. B 51. D 52. A 53. E 54. C

55. Because it has over 390 kilometers of bike lanes.

56. They are well-known for their love of cycling.

57. About 789,000 miles are cycled in Copenhagen every day.

58. It is going to build more bike lanes, widen existing lanes, create biking-only bridges over the city's waterways, provide more space for parking bikes, and improve safety along existing bike routes.
59. They are healthier, more environmentally-friendly, and allow for better quality of life.
- X. 60. D 61. B 62. C 63. C 64. A
- XI. 65. use 66. from 67. any/ a 68. pollution  
69. in 70. caused 71. rubbish/ garbage/... 72. collect
- XII.** 73. If my home installed a solar water heater, we would save a lot of energy.
74. If all households in Viet Nam turned off lights during the Earth Hour, we would save enough electricity to develop our rural areas.
75. If students in our school didn't throw litter on the school ground, our campus would look greener and fresher.
76. If people used glass bottles, they would use them again and again.
77. If we installed a wind turbine, our school would become more eco-friendly.
78. If people used organic fertilizers, they would prevent land pollution.
79. If people rode bikes, they would keep the air less polluted.
80. If that factory had a wastewater treatment system, the river wouldn't become so polluted.

## Unit 8: English speaking countries

### A. PHONETICS

<b>Oo</b>	<i>coffee, Maltese</i>
<b>oO</b>	<i>trainee, trustee, payee, Burmese, Chinese, Viennese</i>
<b>Ooo</b>	<i>jubilee</i>
<b>oOo</b>	<i>committee</i>
<b>ooO</b>	<i>absentee, devotee, nominee, referee, refugee, expellee, addressee, guarantee, divorcee, Sudanese, Lebanese, Nepalese, Congolese, Japanese, Vietnamese, Togolese, Annamese</i>
<b>oooO</b>	<i>examinee, interviewee, Senegalese</i>

## B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

I. 1. *gardens* 2. *go to work* 3. *a snack* 4. *finish* 5. *start*

6. *open* 7. *close* 8. *stay*

II. 1. official 2. began/ started 3. population 4. ability

5. written 6. in 7. Therefore 8. students

19

III. 1. is 2. has 3. takes 4. has welcomed

5. has adopted 6. has become 7. is occurring 8. has been

## C. SPEAKING

1. English and Welsh are the two official languages of Wales
2. 42% of the South and West Wales coastline is considered "Heritage Coast"
3. Rugby Union is seen as the national sport and is passionately played by most of the country
4. the country of Wales is said to contain more castles per square mile than any other country in the world
5. Wales is often called "The Land of Song"
6. Because it is well-known for its harpists, male choirs, and solo artists

## D. READING

I. 1. D 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. B 6. C 7. D 8. C

II. 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. A 6. D

III. 1. F 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. T

IV. 1. D 2. D 3. A 4. D 5. A 6. C

V. *Task 1:* 1. C 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. E

*Task 2:* 6. C 7. A 8. E 9. B 10. D 11. F

*Task 3:* 12. False 13. True 14. False 15. True 16. False 17. False VI. 1.

English is an important global language.

2. He invented Basic English in 1930. It had only 850 words.
3. Because he wanted to invent a language similar to English, but with much simpler spelling.
4. It has no grammar.
5. It was 'NetLingo'.

VII. 1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T

6. from other Polynesian islands      7. 280,000 8. They have brown skin, dark brown eyes, and wavy black hair.

9. They live a comfortable, modern life.

10. They speak, dance, and sing.

**VIII.** 1. C    2. D    3. A    4. B    5. T    6. F    7. T    8. T

9. T    10. T    11. F    12. F

#### E. WRITING

1. Second, at 9.30 am, I pass through Parliament Square, seeing the Houses of Parliament and the Big Ben clock.
2. Then, at 10 o'clock, I travel past Westminster Abbey where Prince William married Kate Middleton in a royal wedding ceremony.
3. After that, I admire government buildings at Whitehall and Downing Street, and then see all the noise and activity that surrounds Nelson's Column at Trafalgar Square.
4. Next, at 11.15 am, I watch the Changing of the Guard ceremony at Buckingham Palace.
5. At noon, I rest and refuel with a large lunch with my own expense.
6. In the afternoon, at 1.30 pm, I continue my day of sightseeing with a visit to the City of London, an area just east of the city center where many of London's banks can be found.
7. Soon, I see other iconic London attractions such as St Paul's Cathedral and Mansion House, and I look out for the sights as our guide explains their history.
8. Finally, at 3.15 pm, I continue to the Tower of London, and go inside to explore at your leisure, and end my tour at 5 pm.

20

#### TEST (UNIT 8)

I. 1. A      2. D    3. B    4. D    5. D

II. 1. C      2. A    3. B    4. C    5. B    6. A    7. D    8. C    9. B    10. D

III. 1. *official* 2. *resources* 3. *unique*    4. *wealthy*    5. *diverse*

6. *sincere* 7. *quality* 8. *symbol* 9. *accents* 10. *native*

IV. 1. *wheel* 2. *symbol* 3. *takes* 4. *gives*

5. *allows* 6. *iconic*    7. *high* 8. *close*

V. 1. has    2. are      3. have been 4. use – feel    5. has become

6. have made 7. has become      8. shares 9. has won 10. are shaking

VI. 1. F 2. D      3. B    4. H    5. E    6. G    7. A    8. C

VII. 1. B 2. C      3. A    4. C    5. B    6. A    7. D    8. A

VIII. 1. C 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. C

IX. 1. E 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. D 6. T 7. T 8. F 9. F 10. T

X. **Junior Summer Camp in San Francisco, California**

75. Our junior summer camps offer learners aged 10 - 17 from all over the world the opportunity to improve their English language skills
76. We offer a full afternoon and evening social programme, including a variety of sports activities, and visits to local sites of interest.
77. On their first day, students take a test to ensure they are placed in an appropriate level.
78. On arrival, students also receive a welcome pack including information about the course and a free student bag.
79. Students have a progress test in class every two weeks and meet individually with their teacher to review their progress.
80. At the end of the course, students receive a certificate as a record of their English language studies.

Unit 9: Natural disasters

A. PHONETICS

I.

<b>oOoo</b>	analogy, apology, astrology, biology, ecology, ethnology, geology, philosophy, psychology, biography, geography, telegraphy, photography, calligraphy, stenography, cosmography
<b>ooOoo</b>	archaeology, audiology, futurology, ideology, methodology, musicology, sociology, volcanology, radiography, oceanography,
<b>oooOoo</b>	bacteriology, biotechnology, microbiology, historiography

II. 1. a'nalogy 2. audi'ology 3. eth'nology 4. ide'ology 5. biotech'nology

6. cos'mography 7. ca'lligraphy 8. bi'ography 9. ocea'nography 10. histori'ography

B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

I. 1. G 2. E 3. H 4. B 5. F 6. D 7. A 8. C

II. 1. *flood* 2. *drought* 3. *landslide* 4. *hurricane* 5. *tornado*

III. 1. *drops* 2. *a* 3. *irrigated* 4. *causes* 5. *normal*

6. *dry* 7. *blown* 8. *wells* 9. *suffer* 10. *because of*

IV. 1. *provided* 2. *taken* 3. *recover* 4. *suffered*

5. *buried* 6. *were evacuated* 7. *are scattered* 8. *have raged*

21

V. 1. *told* 2. *told* 3. *had called* 4. *had told* 5. *was*

6. *had to* 7. *said* 8. *was* 9. *had been* 10. *were*

11. *says* 12. *feels*

VI.

1. *had done* 2. *had paid* 3. *hadn't slept* 4. *had broken down* 5. *hadn't flown*

6. *Had they gone* 7. *had heard* 8. *had tried* 9. *hadn't had* 10. *hadn't seen*

VII. 1. *had done – went* 2. *had lived – moved* 3. *told – had learned*

4. *had worked – retired* 5. *got – had already started* 6. *came – had changed*

7. *had grown* 8. *came – had waited*

VIII. 1. *had hit* 2. *had returned* 3. *suffered* 4. *occurred – had rained*

5. *said – had caused* 6. *erupted – covered*

IX.

1. *was built* 2. *are greeted* 3. *are given* 4. *is decorated* 5. *are kept*

X. 1. *has* 2. *lasts* 3. *warmer* 4. *temperature*

5. *Fishermen/People* 6. *natural* 7. *happens/ occurs* 8. *understand*

#### C. SPEAKING

I. 1. C 2. F 3. D 4. G 5. B 6. E 7. A

II. 1. H 2. C 3. G 4. J 5. B 6. E 7. I 8. A 9. F 10. D

#### D. READING

I. Answers: 1, 2, 3, 5, 7

II. 1. B 2. D 3. B 4. D 5. B 6. D 7. A 8. A 9. C 10. A

III. 1. F 2. NI 3. F 4. T 5. F 6. T 7. NI 8. F

**IV. Part A: 3.** Students escape when the volcano erupts

**Part B:** 1. True      2. True      3. False 4. NM      5. False 6. True      7. False 8. False

**V. 1.** It hit the Gulf of Mexico in 1969.

2. Her bed was floating near the ceiling, and then it floated out of the window.
3. It was falling down.
4. It reached a speed of 234 m per hour.
5. It carried her 8 km from her house.

**VI. 1.** True      2. False 3. True      4. False 5. True

**VII. 1.** B      2. B      3. C      4. B      5. D **VIII. 1.** B      2. C      3. A      4. A      5. D

**E. WRITING**

**I. 1.** I couldn't play football because I had broken my leg.

2. They failed the exam because they hadn't studied.
3. I didn't recognize him because he had had a haircut.
4. She was tired because she hadn't slept well.
5. We were hungry because we hadn't cooked enough food.

**II. Severe Landslides in Mekong Delta provinces**

1. Recently, landslides swept away hectares of vegetables and fruit crops, and many houses.
2. Last week, An Hiep Commune in Dong Thap Province met a high risk of landslide disaster.
3. A severe landslide occurred there three weeks ago, and it destroyed completely over 2,000 square meters of agricultural land and at least five houses.
4. Last year, there were seven landslides in An Hiep commune, causing a loss of more than VND 2 billion.

**22**

5. In Can Tho, a landslide occurred in Cai Rang District, and buried three houses and 50 meters of road.
6. The authorities already had plans to move households from high risk zones to safer places.

**III. Drought in Central Viet Nam**

1. A drought emergency was declared last month after five months without rain in Ninh Thuan and other provinces in Central Viet Nam.
2. A drought is a long period when there is little or no rain.



3. Hot weather with the highest temperature of 42 degree Celsius hit Central Viet Nam.
4. In particular, rainfall is lower than the average of the past few years.
5. In Ninh Thuan, about 50,000 local people suffered from drinking water shortage.
6. Hundreds of hectares of rice and vegetables were destroyed and 500 cattle died due to prolonged drought.
7. In Gia Lai and other provinces, water at many reservoirs dropped to the “dead” level for several months.
8. The provinces received financial supports worth VND 172 billion from the government.
- 9.

#### TEST (UNIT 9)

I. 1. D      2. C    3. A    4. B    5. D

II. 6. C      7. B    8. D    9. B    10. B    11. D    12. D    13. D    14. C    15. A

III. 16. eruption    17. evacuation    18. destructive    19. Survivors  
20. accommodation    21. provision

IV. 22. *assistance* 23. *damage*    24. *tsunami* 25. *officials*

26. *property* 27. *debris* 28. *weather bureau* 29. *warnings*

30. *ash*    31. *emergency* 32. *Climate changes*    33. *rainstorm*

V. 34. was caused 35. will be closed 36. was expected    37. were sent

38. were hit 39. were blown 40. are warned 41. are put out

42. were flooded    43. were destroyed – were damaged VI.

44. hit    45. affected 46. occurred 47. had warned 48. had instructed

49. were rescued    50. were killed    51. sank    52. were destroyed    53.

took VII. 54. lack    55. environment 56. on    57. clouds    58. areas    59. time

VIII.      60. H    61. J    62. D    63. G    64. B    65. I    66. F    67. A    68. C    69. E

IX. 70. C    71. C    72. B    73. A    74. D

x. Southern Thailand hit by smoke from Indonesia

75. Heavy smoke from forest fires has resulted in the worst pollution for over ten years in southern Thailand.
76. The smoke has threatened local people’s health in seven provinces in the south.
77. Dangerous levels of pollution were recorded in the Thai city of Songkhla.
78. Earlier this month, a number of flights to Phuket were cancelled because of the smoke.

79. In the past two months, thousands of forest fires in Indonesia have left bad effects on Southeast Asia.
80. Pollution has also increased rates of respiratory illnesses.

### TEST YOURSELF 3

- I. 1. C 2. A 3. C 4. D 5. A
- II. 6. *capital* 7. *popular* 8. *while* 9. *mountainous* 10. *variety*  
11. *but* 12. *area* 13. *landscapes* 14. *diverse* 15. *development*
- III. 16. D 17. F 18. G 19. H 20. A 21. B 22. C 23. E
- IV. 24. invited 25. could help 26. would email 27. knew 28. were 29. had  
30. had – would get 31. spoke – would be 32. knew – would tell 33. would do – were not
- V. 34. H 35. E 36. C 37. J 38. A 39. G 40. F 41. B 42. I 43. D
- VI. 44. B 45. D 46. B 47. C 48. B 49. A 50. C 51. A
- VII. 52. English 53. use 54. main/ major 55. speak  
56. first 57. children/kids 58. native 59. rising/increasing
- VIII. 60. D 61. A 62. E 63. B 64. C 65. T 66. F 67. T 68. T 69. F
- IX. 70. It is considered one of the strongest tropical cyclones ever observed.
71. It is Yolanda.
72. It was disastrous and widespread.
73. About 9.5 million people have been affected by the typhoon.
74. At least five people died in Vietnam when Haiyan hit the country.
75. It would be long and difficult.
- X. 76. The Opening Ceremony on Saturday, March 21 includes a variety of live entertainment including the AUN-J Classic Orchestra, pop singer Misato Watanabe, jazz and classical pianist Manami Morita and singer/song writer Deborah Bond.
77. In Blossom Kite Festival on Saturday, March 28, you can enjoy Kite flying competition, special demonstrations and kite making for children.
78. Southwest Waterfront Fireworks Festival on Saturday, April 4 offers you practical activities, musical entertainment, food and drink.
79. In National Cherry Blossom Festival Parade on Saturday, April 11, you can take part in marching bands, dance troupes, watch giant helium balloons and see special celebrity guests.

80. In Sakura Matsuri – Japanese Street Festival on Saturday, April 11, you can enjoy arts, crafts, demonstrations, live entertainment, food and drink.

## Unit 10: Communication

### A. PHONETICS

#### I.

<b>Ooo</b>	<i>purity, density, gravity, clarity, quality, quantity, additive, positive, primitive, transitive, genitive</i>
<b>oOoo</b>	<i>longevity, mentality, facility, priority, authority, majority, minority, fatality, reality, community, security, appositive, insensitive, infinitive, inquisitive, repetitive, definitive, acquisitive</i>
<b>ooOoo</b>	<i>continuity, inactivity, capability, hospitality, nationality, similarity, relativity, visibility, generosity, curiosity, opportunity, university, possibility</i>

- II. 1. density 2. security 3. opportunity 4. community  
5. positive 6. responsibility

### B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

- I. 1. B 2. D 3. F 4. I 5. H 6. E 7. A 8. G 9. C  
II. 1. *make* 2. *leave* 3. *take* 4. *post* 5. *send*  
III. 1. E 2. G 3. I 4. J 5. A 6. C 7. B 8. D 9. F 10. H

#### IV.

A/ Picture a (**a pen**): *write a letter, write a note*

Picture b (**a cell phone**): *send/get a text message, check your messages*

Picture c (**a computer**): *send/receive an e-mail, go on the Internet*

Picture d (**a phone**): *make a phone call, leave a message*

Picture e (**a card**): *post a letter/card, send a card*

Picture f (**a digital camera**): *take/send a photo*

- B/ 1. send an e-mail or call someone 2. send an e-mail or send a text message  
3. go on the Internet 4. leave a message

5. wrote a letter                      6. send a card  
7. make a phone call or send an e-mail      8. leave a message  
9. send a card or send an e-mail 10. go on the Internet **V.**

1. will be sharing 2. will be using 3. will be developing      4. will be helping  
5. will be using 6. will be changing                      7. will be using      8. will be developing  
9. will be using 10. will be making

- VI.** 1. to post 2. to have – (to) drink      3. tidy              4. to stop  
5. doing – to do      6. going

### C. SPEAKING

**I.** 1. Hi! Are you free to meet tomorrow for a drink? Where? When? See you! Nick xx  
Your reply: I am free 2moro 2. How abt seeing @ my house, abt 7? C u soon!

2. Hello. We're having a party this Saturday at my house? Can you come? Are you going to bring anyone? Let me know. Thanks! Mai.

Your reply: Gr8. Wd I bring Mi n Phong 2 the party? Thx 4 invitation. Luv.

### II. (Suggested answers)

1. I'd like to speak to Nick, please. Is he at home now?  
2. Oh. Could you tell him to call/phone me back when he gets home?  
3. (your phone number) 4. Thank you so much. Bye for now.  
5. (your own idea)

**III.** 1. G 2. D 3. B 4. I 5. E 6. A 7. H 8. J 9. C 10. F

### D. READING

**I.** 1. B 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. B 6. A 7. B 8. A

**II.** 1. C 2. D 3. A 4. B 5. A 6. C 7. B 8. D

- III.** 1. They carried letters by hand over hundreds of kilometers.  
2. It cost just one penny.  
3. They delivered letters several times a day.  
4. They are arranged in the same way as the typewriter.  
5. It appeared in the 1870s.  
6. Because the talking was perhaps easier than the walking.  
7. It was sent in 1992.  
8. We send over a billion text messages around the world every day.

IV. 1. D 2. B 3. F 4. A 5. C

v. 1. He has spent about thirty hours on the Internet this week.

2. He goes to bed at half past eleven in the evening.

3. Because she thinks it's really bad for you.

4. By sending and receiving e-mails.

5. She usually reads about four or five books in a week.

E. WRITING

I. **Do's:** A, B, C, F, G, H, I, K

**Don'ts:** D, E, J

II. Maria,

Thanks for lunch yesterday. It was great to see you. Let's continue our conversation about the project. Maybe it is Wednesday next week at my place. There is still a lot of things to discuss. By the way, please don't forget to bring the information we talked about.

Let me know about next week. See you later.

Peter

III. 1. F 2. I 3. D 4. H 5. G 6. B 7. J 8. A 9. E 10. C

**Email Homework To Teacher**

To: teacherLan@school.edu

From: MaiNguyen@gmail.com

Subject: English Essay from Nguyen Thi Mai

Dear Ms. Lan,

My name is Nguyen Thi Lan, and I am your student from class 8C. I have attached my essay on "Communication in the 21<sup>st</sup> century", which is due by the end of today. Thank you for allowing me to email it to you instead of turning it in during class. I really appreciate if you give some comments on my essay so that I will write better in the near future.

Thank you so much.

Best regards, Nguyen Thi Mai

TEST (UNIT 10)

I. 1. B 2. C 3. D 4. A 5. B

II. 6. C 7. A 8. D 9. D 10. B 11. C 12. D 13. B 14. D 15. A

III. 16. D 17. B 18. D 19. C 20. A 21. C 22. A 23. D

IV. 24. *cyber-bullying* 25. *posted* 26. *homepage* 27. *view*  
28. *keep in touch with* 29. *online*

V. 30. C 31. F 32. D 33. B 34. E 35. A

VI. 36. B 37. A 38. D 39. C 40. B 41. C 42. D 43. A

VII. 44. F 45. T 46. T 47. T 48. F 49. F

### VIII.

Task 1: 1. C 2. C 3. C

Task 2: 4. D 5. G 6. E 7. F 8. B 9. A 10. C

Task 3: 11. F 12. I 13. D 14. B 15. J 16. E 17. G  
18. A 19. C 20. H

### IX. Dear Teacher,

My name is Hoang Diem Mi, and I am your student from class 8A. I would like to express my appreciation for all your efforts in teaching chemistry to our class. I write/ am writing this letter to apologize for not submitting my lab report on time. I am sorry for forgetting the

### 26

deadline of the report, due last week. I promise that this thing does not happen again. I hope for your kind understanding, and accept my late submission.

Best regards,

Hoang Diem Mi

### X. Dear Ms. Huong,

I am sorry that I was absent from your Biology class yesterday. A classmate told me that handouts for the next lab assignment were given. We have to submit our assignments next Friday. Can I meet you during tomorrow's recess to ask some questions about the correct way to write it? I look forward to speaking to you soon.

Thank you very much.

Best regards,

Pham Van Phong

## Unit 11: Science and technology

### A. PHONETICS

#### I.

<b>ooO</b>	<i>uncertain, unfasten, uncommon, unworried, immortal,</i>
<b>ooO</b>	<i>unafraid, unaware,</i>
<b>ooOoo</b>	<i>uncomfortable, unpopular, impossible, impersonal, improbable, immovable, impurity, impassable</i>
<b>ooOo</b>	<i>unambitious, unemployment, uncompleted, imprecision</i>
<b>ooOooo</b>	<i>immeasurable</i>
<b>ooOoo</b>	<i>unacceptable, unachievable, unbelievable, immaterial</i>

<b>ooOooo</b>	<i>uncommunicative</i>
---------------	------------------------

II. 1. unattractive 2. impolite 3. impractical 4. unnatural 5. unofficial  
6. unpleasant 7. uncompetitive 8. unlucky 9. unnecessary 10. improper

### B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

I. 1. artist 2. novelist 3. beginner 4. ancestor 5. pianist

II. 1. educational 2. inventions 3. construction 4. exploration

5. comfortable 6. harmful

#### III.

1. will have built 2. will connect 3. will design 4. will have run 5. will have implanted 6. will be taking 7. will become 8. will create IV.

1. The scientist said that cloning would become more popular in the next century.
2. Dr. Nelson said that every home would have at least one robot to perform any boring task.
3. Our teacher told us that parents did not allow children to play computer games for a long period of time.
4. The doctor told his patient that nutrition pills could cause serious side effects.

5. The physicist said that nuclear power plants didn't require a lot of space.
6. The politician told the audience that wrong decisions in Chernobyl had caused a big nuclear explosion. **V.**
1. Chau said that the real inventor of the telephone was Antonio Meucci, a poor Italian American.

**27**

2. She said that Meucci shared a workshop with Bell in the 1860s, and made a "talking telegraph" for his wife, who was ill in bed.
3. She said that Meucci didn't become the inventor because he never took his idea to the US Patent Office.
4. She also said that Meucci was too poor to pay the \$250 that he needed.
5. She said that Bell took/had taken the invention to the Patent Office, and became the inventor.

#### C. SPEAKING

##### I.

1. He was born in England.
2. He now lives in Massachusetts in the USA.
3. He looks very ordinary (about sixty years old and with brown hair).
4. Yes, he did. He went to school in London.
5. Because both his parents worked with computers.
6. He went to Oxford University, and studied physics.
7. He became more and more interested in computers.
8. In 1989 while he was working in Switzerland.
9. Because Tim Berners-Lee decided to make his ideas free to everyone.
10. He thinks that the web is a universe of information and it is for everyone.

**II.** 1. E 2. C 3. G 4. D 5. A 6. F 7. H 8. B

#### D. READING

**I.** 1. A 2. C 3. D 4. B 5. B 6. C 7. A 8. B 9. C 10. A

**II.** 1. H 2. E 3. F 4. G 5. A 6. D 7. C 8. T 9. F 10. F

11. T 12. T

**III.** 1. B 2. D 3. F 4. C 5. E 6. A

##### IV.

1. It got darker outside.
2. She thought that there should be a way to make her paper easier to see in the dark.
3. She used phosphorescent paint to cover an acrylic board.



4. The Glo-Sheet/ It can emit light but without heat.
5. She was 12 years old then.

#### E. WRITING

There are several advantages of smartphone. Smartphones give users the ability to surf websites instead of using a desktop or a laptop. They also have applications which help us to create and edit Microsoft office documents. Smartphones have GPS which helps us to find the place we are looking for. With a smartphone, we can have access to any email accounts, like Outlook or Gmail, social networking sites, such as Facebook and Twitter. However, smartphones have some disadvantages. Smartphones are not durable, especially when they are not taken good care of. It is very expensive to buy smartphones compared to other phones. Smartphones can only work efficiently when there is an Internet connection. You cannot depend on smartphones for all your work but you need a computer to do some tasks.

(131 words)

#### TEST (UNIT 11)

- I. 1. A      2. D    3. B    4. C    5. C  
 II. 6. C      7. D    8. A    9. D    10. B  
 III. 11. D 12. A      13. D 14. C 15. A 16. C 17. D 18. B 19. C 20. B

**28**

**IV.**

21. development 22. safety – risky 23. scientist – researcher – scientific

24. dangerous 25. production 26. industrial – medical

27. technological 28. ability

v. 29. runner      30. homemaker    31. foreigner      32. programmer 33. hobbyist

vi. 34. youngest    35. contributions    36. researchers    37. independence

38. technicians 39. mathematicians 40. mathematical 41. founders

**VII.** 42. Our teacher said that we were learning more about our universe.

43. Dr. Nelson said that scientists had made various applications in long distance communication.

44. Our Chemistry teacher told us that science was a good and useful servant but it was a bad destructive master.

45. Our headmaster said that space tourism would broaden our knowledge of space.
46. Our History teacher told us that during the time in Paris in 1946 Uncle Ho had attracted several Vietnamese scientists to return to the country.
47. Our Math teacher said that Professor Le Van Thiem had believed in the importance of education and science, so he had founded a teacher training college and a college of fundamental science.

**VIII.** 48. D 49. G 51. I 52. E 53. A 54. F 55. J 56. C  
50. B 57. H

**IX.** 58. T 59. F 61. T 62. F 63. T 64. F 65. T  
60. T

**X.** 66. He studied to serve the country's independence.

67. He tried to study the science of making weapons.
68. It was the good thing to research and manufacture weapons for our soldiers to fight the enemy, so Uncle Ho changed his name – Tran Dai Nghia.
69. Because he was a gentle and quiet engineer, but his weapons were so successful.
70. It was bazookas/ recoilless canon (SKZ)/ flying bombsl. **XI.** 71. Tim Berners-Lee was born in England.
72. He went to school in London.
73. When he was 18, he went to Oxford University.
74. At university, he become more interested in computers.
75. At Oxford, he made his first computer from a television.
76. He graduated in 1976.
77. He got a job with a computer company in England.
78. In 1989, he worked as a software engineer at CERN – the large physics laboratory in Switzerland.
79. Scientists come from all over the world, and they have difficulty (in) sharing information.
80. He thought he saw/ could see a way to solve the problems: millions of computers were being connected together through the Net.

## Unit 12: Life on other planets

### A. PHONETICS

#### I.

<b>Oo</b>	<i>painful, skillful, fearless, spotless, harmful, thoughtful, cloudless, breathless, tasteless, faithful</i>
-----------	---

<b>Ooo</b>	<i>powerful, wonderful, bottomless, leaderless, effortless, motionless</i>
<b>oOo</b>	<i>disgraceful, delightful, successful, respectful, resourceful</i>
<b>oOoo</b>	<i>expressionless, directionless</i>
<b>ooOo</b>	<i>uneventful, disrespectful</i>

## II.

1. careless 2. colourful 3. joyful 4. fearless 5. careful
6. friendless 7. cheerful 8. restless 9. forgetful 10. Thoughtless
11. successful 12. useless

## B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

- I. 1. D 2. F 3. H 4. E 5. B 6. A 7. J 8. I 9. G 10. C

## II.

1. *system* 2. *atmosphere* 3. *conditions* 4. *difference*
5. *clouds* 6. *ocean* 7. *kind* 8. *life*

## III.

1. *opened* 2. *came out* 3. *had masks on their faces*
4. *came up to me* 5. *wanted to run away*

## IV.

1. *Earth* 2. *ordinary* 3. *billion* 4. *universe* 5. *intelligent*
6. *believe* 7. *numbers* 8. *in* 9. *spaceship* 10. *nearest*

## V.

1. when – had started 2. started/ had started 3. to know – had worked
4. said – had worked 5. the ISS was 6. was – it weighed
7. if/ whether – was 8. there had always been

## VI.

1. Nhi said space offered unique pleasures including the view and zero gravity activities.
2. Duong thought that space travel was risky and expensive.
3. Mai asked if/ whether Enceladus would provide a habitable environment for life.
4. Nick asked when the flyby took place.
5. Mi asked what scientists discovered from the photos of Saturn's moon – Enceladus.

#### C. SPEAKING

I. 1. C 2. E 3. B 4. F 5. D 6. A

II. 1. H 2. B 3. I 4. C 5. F 6. G 7. D 8. J 9. A 10. E

#### D. READING

I. 1. A 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. A 6. B 7. D 8. B II. 1. B 2. A 3. C 4. D 5. A 6. B 7. C 8. C 9. D 10. B

#### III.

1. False. There were no other cars on the road.
2. True.
3. True.
4. False. The time stopped at that time.
5. False. She fell asleep in front of her computer.
6. True.
7. False. The alien put something over her mouth.
8. False. She woke up by herself.

IV. 1. C 2. E 3. B 4. A 5. D

V. 1. T 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. F 6. T 7. F 8. T

VI. 1. C 2. A 3. E 4. B 5. D

6. Pluto was discovered by Clyde Tombaugh in 1930.
7. Because it has solid surfaces but its mass is icy material.

#### 30

8. It traveled more than 3.6 billion miles to take the photos.
9. Because huge mountains on Pluto are made of water ice.
10. The New Horizon's mission makes the United States the first nation to send a space probe to every planet from Mercury to Pluto.

#### E. WRITING

##### I.

1. Dr. Nelson said that every weekend the astronauts could have private video-conferences with their families on the Earth.

2. Nick asked his teacher if/ whether the astronauts had ever forgotten anything from the Earth.
3. The teacher told Nick that the astronauts on the ISS used a 3-D printer on board to print certain objects.
4. Mai asked Dr. Nelson where we/they could look for life.
5. The teacher said that Ganymede, the largest moon of Jupiter, had a large salt water ocean.
6. Mi asked the teacher if/ whether Mars had ice under its surface.

## II.

1. Aliens might be small creatures made of chitin – an insect skeletal protein.
2. They may have thick skin to minimize evaporation and conserve water.
3. They might have 18 pairs of legs with sucker-like feet.
4. They might be short with thick legs to support their bodies against the strong gravity.
5. They might absorb oxygen right through their skin.
6. They might use antennas to collect information.
7. They might be intelligent robots which may fly through the air.
8. They might look like a jellyfish who may communicate through flashes of light.

## TEST (UNIT 12)

- I. 1. C      2. A    3. A    4. C    5. D
- II. 6. C      7. B    8. C    9. D    10. D    11. A    12. C    13. D    14. C    15. B
- III. 16. hopeful      17. colourless      18. homeless      19. armful  
20. wonderful    21. thoughtless
- IV. 22. C    23. G      24. E    25. I    26. H    27. J    28. F    29. B    30. D    31. A
- V. 32. A    33. C      34. D    35. B    36. A    37. D    38. B    39. B    40. C    41. A
- VI. 42. True    43. True    44. False    45. False    46. False    **VII.**  
47. first    48. speed/velocity    49. collect    50. understanding    51. transported  
52. from    53. watch    54. back    55. work    56. suits
- VIII. 57. D    58. A    59. B    60. C    61. A
- IX. 62. It is Neptune's largest moon.
63. It might make an interesting place to set up a space colony.
64. There has been only one.
65. We can see smooth areas next to volcanos.

66. They are formed by clouds of dust and nitrogen gas which erupt from the volcanos.  
**X. 67.** Dr. Nelson said the heat from its sun had made Kepler-452b lose its oceans.  
 68. Mai asked how old was Kepler-452b – the Earth’s cousin.  
 69. Nick said that the recycling system of the ISS supplied 4 liters of water a day.  
 70. Duong asked Mi how the astronauts could wash their hair.  
 71. Mi said that they used no-rinse shampoo and a towel to wash their hair.  
 72. Phong said that many thousand people had seen a UFO hovering around the International Space Station the previous year/ the year before.  
**XI. 73.** Aliens may have a hard container for the brain.  
 74. They may have two eyes, a nose, and a mouth like us.  
 75. Their eyes might be bug-eyed, and the nose might not be in the middle of the face.  
 76. Besides teeth, aliens might have other systems of eating.  
 77. They might not have necks, because they can turn round their heads.  
 78. They may have two arms, but the arms may have suckers to pick up small objects.  
 79. Their hand might have only three or four fingers.  
 80. The number of joints might be greater, and the direction of bend might be different.

#### TEST YOURSELF 4

- I.** 1. D      2. C    3. A    4. D    5. B  
**II.** 6. C      7. B    8. A    9. B    10. D    11. C    12. D    13. C    14. C    15. B  
**III.** 16. *a smartphone and a landline phone*  
 17. *a smartphone, a laptop, and a tablet computer* 18. *a smartphone, a laptop, and a tablet computer* 19. *a smartphone, a laptop, and a tablet computer*  
 20. *a smartphone, a laptop, and a tablet computer*  
 21. *an internet connection, and a Wi-Fi connection* 22. *a smartphone, a laptop, and a tablet computer*  
 23. *an internet connection, and a Wi-Fi connection*  
 24. *an internet connection, and a Wi-Fi connection*  
 25. *a social network*  
**IV.** 26. G 27. E      28. H    29. F    30. D    31. A    32. B    33. C  
**V.** 34. are    35. will come      36. have wondered  
 37. will be taking 38. will have learned 39. will have discovered

40. will be looking for    41. will have travelled 42. will have improved 43. will have developed

VI. 44. E 45. H    46. G 47. B 48. C 49. A 50. D 51. F

VII. 52. I 53. F    54. D 55. H 56. A 57. G 58. C 59. J 60. B 61. E

VIII. 62. B 63. D 64. A 65. D 66. D 67. B 68. C 69. B

IX. 70. Netiquette is the etiquette or good manners of using the Internet.

71. Being friendly and polite.

72. We should ask someone's permission before posting anything about them on the web.

73. We should remove any personal information like their name and email address.

74. We can block that person who is rude in cyberspace, or talk to a trusted adult about the matter. **X**.

75. health risks    76. don't exercise 77. to win matches

78. how to solve 79. a good way    80. to build strong